

Handwritten for 89

I. 2. 14

W.D.S. ...

3821

FROM  
THE LIBRARY  
OF  
SIR WILLIAM OSLER, BART.  
OXFORD

G. A. POYNTER,  
ANTICUARIAN BOOK-SHOP,  
NEXT TO GENERAL POST OFFICE,  
READING.

3821. *The same.* The birth of Mankynde, otherwise named the womans booke. Newly set fourth, corrected, and augmented. Whose contentes ye may reade in the Table of the booke, and most playnely in the prologue.

By Thomas Raynalde Phisition. sm. 4<sup>o</sup>.  
[*Lond., R. Jugge*], (1565).

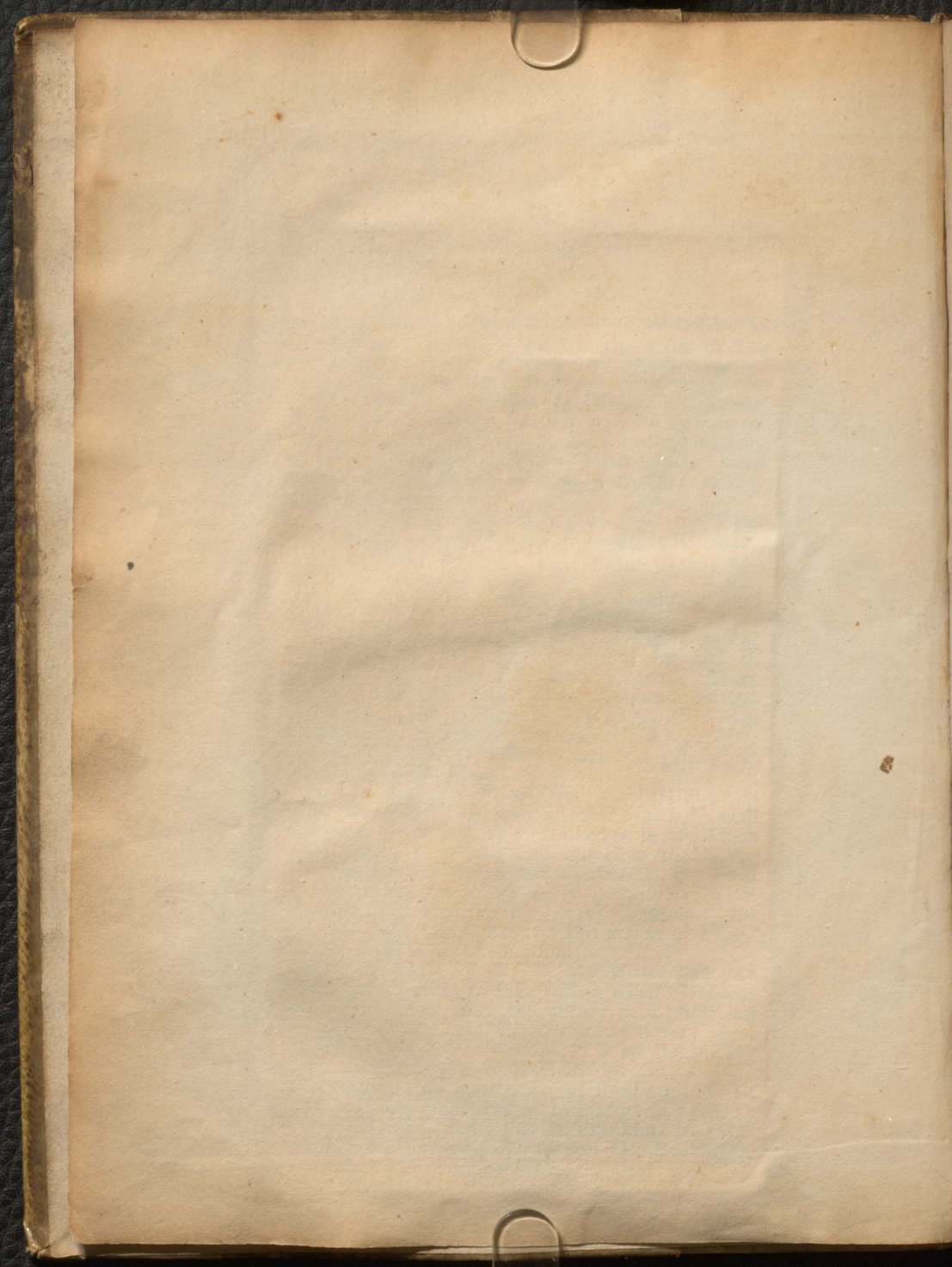
Black letter. The title-page has an ornamental border containing the monogram-motto of Richard Jugge, whose pelican device occurs under the date at the end (leaf 131). There are 2 leaves (4 plates) of woodcut 'birth figures'; but the anatomical plates are wanting, with the exception of one fragment, the 'thirde figure of women' (leaf 47<sup>v</sup>) which has been pasted on the first birth figure; leaves 89-90 (O4-5) also are missing.

No. 8 in Klein's list of English eds. (and fig. 13 of the plate). Ballantyne (p. 316) describes this ed. and reproduces the anatomical figures, which, taken from Vesalius, were added in the 1545 ed.

The 1st ed., 1540, was an augmented translation by Richard Jonas of the 'De partu' of Rösslin (no. 3819); the 2nd, 1545, was "revised from top to toe" and enlarged by Dr. Raynalde, who also edited the 1552 ed. In the present ed. the Prologue, most of bk. 1, and ch. 6 (on 'bellyfyng', i. e. cosmetic, medicines) in bk. 4 are by him; chs. 1-5 of bk. 4 are by Jonas; and bks. 2-3 are Rösslin. The first 3 eds. were printed by 'T. R.' or 'Tho. Ray.', whose name, like the editor's, was Thomas Raynald.

For a discussion of Raynald as a printer see Ballantyne (pp. 299-302) who doubts if the physician and printer were the same. Duff (no. 6897, p. 130) seems not to doubt it. [W. O.]

Mr. W. H. Buckler, in a personal communication (1924), suggests that Dr. Raynalde, the editor, may have been a Thos. Raynolde of Merton College (B.A., 1518; Fellow, 1520) who, through the influence of John Chambre, physician to Henry VIII, became chaplain to Queen Jane Seymour. This connexion and the fact that he visited Paris both have some significance (cf. Ballantyne, pp. 304-6). He should not be confused with Thos. Raynoldes, or Reynolds, B.A. in 1522, Fellow of Merton in 1526 and later Warden.



W. H. H. H.

1200

Nicholas porry his booke of  
 feet in the county of oron yeamen  
 for all the fins that I have don lord  
 bid meo out of hand and make meout  
 A from twofobls that notzinge dnterstand  
 Nicholas porry

Dr. A. M. Hellman in his  
"Collection of early obstetrical  
books", p. 51, describes both  
the woodcut supporters of the  
title-border as females. In  
his copy the upper inner part  
has faded - time has shaved  
off the gent's beard and  
moustache!

W. W. F. 1952.



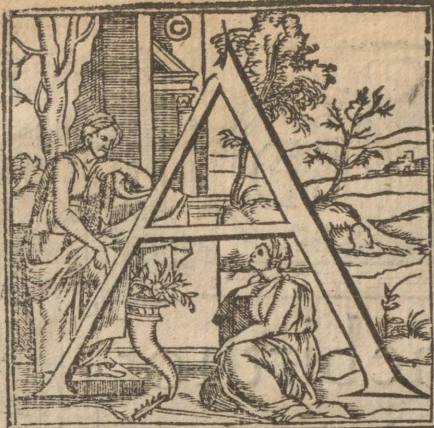
# The birth of

mankynde, other-  
wyle named the  
womans booke.

*a good booke for its day.*  
Newly set forth, corrected, and  
augmented. Whose con-  
tentes ye may reade in  
the Table of the  
booke, and  
most  
playnely in the  
prologue.

By Thomas Raynalde  
Phisition. 1565.





U be it some thus maye perhappes  
 synde some lacke of  
 faythfulnesse and dili-  
 gence in this worke:  
 yet ther is none so fro-  
 ward to denie but that  
 there is some fruite &  
 profite to be founde  
 therein, seeing that it  
 commeth now abrode  
 much moze enlarged &  
 encreased, & moze di-  
 ligently corrected then

it was befoze eyther in the Latine oz in the Englishe. And  
 where befoze in the other pintes, there lacked matter neces-  
 sarie to the opening and declaration of the figures partey-  
 nyng to the inner partes: it is nowe so playnely set forth,  
 that the simplest mydwysse which can reade, may both un-  
 derstande for her better instruction, and also other women  
 that haue neede of her helpe, the moze commoditie.

Wherefoze my desyre is, that it may be receaved  
 and practised of mydwyses and all other  
 matrones, with no lesse successe,  
 then it is with good wyll  
 and desyre wyl-  
 ten to pro-  
 fite  
 and to do good  
 to other.





With a Prologue  
to the women  
readers.

In this i. Cha-  
piter is briefly  
declared the co-  
tentes of the  
first Booke.

Capit. i.

In howe many  
coates the body  
is lapped or in-

Fol. i.

uolued Cap. ii.

Here is declared what the Muskles be. Cap. iiii  
Fol. iiii.

Of the Bell called Peritoneum. Cap. iiii.  
Fol. v.

The declaration of the names and nature of  
the Matrix. Cap. v. Fol. vi.

Of the wombe & his partes. Cap. vi. Fol. vii.

Of the mother port. Cap. vii. Fol. x.

Of the vesselles of seede called the stones, with  
other thereto apperteynyng. Cap. viii.

Fol. xi.

Of the seede byngers. Cap. ix. eodem.

Of the office and vse of these seede byngers.

Cap. x.

Fol. xiiii.

Of the way by the which the seede is sent from  
the stones, to the angles or corners of the ma-  
trix. Cap. xi. Fol. xix.

Here is declared the situation of the bladder in  
women. Cap. xii. Fol. xxi.

Of the baynes which resort to the Matrix, and  
the partes thereof. Item of the Termes and  
theyr course, with the causes thereof. Cap.  
xiii. fol. xxiiii.

Of the three calles or wrappers wherein the  
infant is lapped. Cap. xiiii. fol. xxix.

Which of the three Matrix baynes containe the  
Termes, and how the mylke commeth to the  
womans bzeastes. Cap. xv. fol. xxxv.

The declaration by letters of the figures fo-  
lowyng, wherein be set forth to the eye euery  
part in woman mentioned in this booke be-  
foze.

Of the fyrst figure. fol. xlii.

Of the seconde figure. fol. xlv.

Of the thirde figure. fol. xlvi.

The fourth figure. fol. xlvi.

The fyfth figure. fol. xlii.

The syxth figure. eodem.

The. vii. viii. and. ix. figures. fol. l.

The Table of the seconde Booke.



Of the tyme of birth, and whiche  
is called naturall or vnnatu-  
rall. Cap. i. fol. li.

Of easly and vneasy, difficult, or  
dolorous deliuerance, & the  
causes of it, with the signes  
howe to know and foresee the  
same. Cap. ii. fol. liii.

Howe a woman with chylde shall vse her selfe,  
and what remedies be for them that haue  
harde

harde labour. Cap. iiii.

Fol. lvi.

Remedies and medicines by the whiche the labour may be made tollerable, easie, and without great paine. Cap. iiii.

Fol. lvii.

Howe the secondine or seconde byrth shalbe forced to issue foorth, if it come not freely of his owne kynde. Cap. v.

Fol. lix.

Howe many thynges chaunce to the women after theyr labour, & how to auoyde, defende, or to remedie the same. Cap. vi.

Fol. lxxiii.

Of aborcementes or vntimely byrthes, and the causes of it, and by what remedies it may be defended, holpen, & eased. Cap. vii.

Fol. lxxv.

Of dead byrthes, and by what signes or tokens it may be knowen, by what meanes it may also be expelled. Cap. ix.

Fol. xc.

In the last Chapter of this booke be bryefly related certayne expert medicines, whiche be most requisite to the cheefe purpose entended in this present booke. Cap. x.

Fol. xc.

The thyrde Booke.



In this fyrst Chapter of this thirde booke is fyrst declared the matters therein conteyned, & then how the infant newely borne must be handled, nourished, and looked to. Cap. i.

Folio.

xcviii.

A iiii

Of

- Of the Nurse, and her mylke, and how long the  
chylde shoulde sucke. Capit. ii. fol. C.
- Of diuers diseases & infirmities which chaunce  
to chyldezen lately borne, and the remedies  
therefore. Cap. iii. fol. Ciii.
- Of the flire and ouermuch loosenes of the belly  
fol. Ciiii.
- To vnloose the chylde, beyng bounde. fol. Cv.
- Remedie for the cough and distillation oz ca-  
tarrhes of the head. fol. Cvi.
- Remedie for short wynde. fol. Cvii.
- Against wheales oz bladders on the tong. eodem.
- Of exulceration oz clefture, chappyng oz chy-  
nyng of the mouth. fol. Cviii.
- Of apostumation and runnyng of the eares.  
fol. eodem.
- Of apostumation in the head. fol. Cix.
- Of the swelling oz bolning of the eyes. eodem.
- Of the scumme oz whyte of the eye. eodem.
- Against immoderate heate of the feuer. eodem.
- Agaynst frettyng oz gnawynge in the belly.  
folio. Cr.
- Agaynst swellynge of the body. eodem.
- Agaynst often sneesynge. eodem.
- Of whelkes in the body, and the cure. fol. Cxi.
- Against swelling of the coddres. eodem.
- Agaynst swellynge of the Hauyll. eodem.
- Agaynst vnsleepynesse. fol. Cxii.
- Agaynst verynge oz the hychate. eodem.
- Agaynst often parbreakynge by weakenesse and  
feeblenesse of the stomache. fol. Cxiii.
- Agaynst fearful & terrible dreames. fol. Cxiiii.
- Agaynst

## The Table.

Against issuing forth of the fundament gutte.	eodem.
Folio.	
Agaynst Tenasmus.	eodem.
Agaynst wormes in the belly.	eodem.
Of chafyng or galling of any place of the body.	
Folio.	Cxvi.
Of the falling sicknesse.	eodem.
Consumption or pynning away of the bodye.	
Folio.	Cxvii.
Of lassitude, wearynesse, or heauinesse of the chyldes body.	eodem.
Of tremblyng of the body, or of certayne members of the body, called the palsy.	fol. Cxviii.
Agaynst the strangury or stone, with stoppyng of the brine.	
Of gogle eyes, or loking a squynt.	fol. Cxix.

### The fourth booke,



en. Capi. ii.

If suche thinges the which shalbe entreated of in this fourth booke. Cap. i. fol. cxx. Of conception, & how many wayes it maye be hindred or letted. Cap. ii. fol. eodem. Howe manye wayes conception maye be letted, and how the causes maye be known. fol. Cxxi. Howe

## The Table.

- Howe to know whether lacke of conception be  
of the woman or of the man, and howe it  
may be perceaued whether she be conceaued  
or no. Cap. iiii. fol. Cxxiii.
- Of certayne remedies and medicines whiche  
may farther the woman to conceaue. Cap. v.  
fol. Cxxiiii.
- Of diuers bellisifying receiptes. fol. Cxxvi.
- Of the causes and remedies for dandruffe of the  
head. fol. Cxxvii.
- To take away heere from places where it is  
vnseemely. fol. Cxxviii.
- To do away freckens or other spottes in the  
face. fol. Cxxix.
- To destroy wartes and suche lyke excresensis  
on the face, or els where. fol. eodem.
- To cleare and clarifie the skinne in the handes,  
face, or other part of the body. fol. eodem.
- To souple and mollifie the ruggednesse of the  
skynne. fol. Cxxx.
- Agaynst todayne rpynges of pynples through  
vnkynde heate in the face or els where. eodē.
- To kepe and preserue the teeth cleane. eodem.
- Of stynkyng breath. fol. eodem.
- Of the ranke sauour of the armhouldes. eodem.

¶ Here endeth the Table.



Ere in the begynnyng  
 of this presente Pro-  
 logue, I wyl folowe the  
 example of them, whi-  
 che when they byd any  
 ghestes to dyner oz sup-  
 per, are wont fyrst to  
 declare, what shall be  
 their cheare, what fare,  
 and howe manye dishes  
 they shall haue, pray-  
 yng them to take it in good worth, and to looke  
 for neither better ne worse then hath ben men-  
 tioned of: And euen so here wyl I do. Before  
 that ye enter into the readyng of this litle trea-  
 tise, I shall succinctly & in fewe wordes recite the  
 summe and cheefe contentes of the same, with the  
 vtilitie and profite whiche may ensue to the dili-  
 gent and assentife ouerreader thereof, to the ende  
 that ye of these thinges beyng first well aduertis-  
 sed, may haue the more oz lesse courage to em-  
 ploy your labour in ouerlokyng and perusyng of  
 the same. For commonly it doth occasionate anye  
 man to be the more prompt, redy, and wyllyng  
 to take payne, when he is assured oz certified of  
 the profite, purpose, and fruite thereof comming,  
 and lykewylse it is a great pricke oz allurement,  
 entysing and mouing a man to reade any booke,  
 when he is somewhat first admonished of the mat-  
 ters comprehended and contayned therein.

The entent  
of thauctour

wherefore nowe to come to our purpose, ye

The more  
part of this  
booke tran-  
slated into  
Englyshe  
three or  
four yeres  
past.

The name  
of this booke.

shall vnderstande that about three or foure yeres  
passe, a certayne studious and diligent clarke,  
at the requeste and desyre of dyuers honest and  
ladde matrones, beyng of his acquayntaunce,  
dyd translate out of Latine into Englyshe a great  
parte of this booke, entiteling it accordyng to  
the Latine inscription De partu hominis, that  
is to saye, Of the byrth of mankynde: whiche we  
nowe do name, The womans booke: for so  
muche as the most part, or well neare all there-  
in entreated of, doth concerne and touche onely  
women: In whiche his translation he varied  
or declined nothyng at all from the steppes of  
his Latine aucthour, obseruyng more fidelitie  
in translatyng, then choise or discretion at that  
tyme in admitting and allowyng manye thinges  
in the same booke, greatly needyng admonition  
and wary aduise or counsell to the readers, which  
otherwys myght sometimes vse that for a helpe,  
the whiche should turne to a hinderaunce. Where-  
fore I reuoluyng and earnestly reuisyng from  
top to toe the sayde booke, and herewithall consy-  
dering the manifolde vtilitie and profite whiche  
thereby mought ensue to all women (as tou-  
chyng that purpose) yf it were more narrowly  
looked ouer, and with a straghter iudgement  
more exactly euerye thyng therein pondred and  
tryed, thought my labour and paynes shoulde  
not be euyll employed, ne vnthankfully accep-  
ted and receaued of all honest, discrete and sage  
women, yf I after good and diligent perusing  
thereof, dyd correct and amende suche faultes in  
it,



it, as seemed worthe of the same, and to aduise the readers what thinges were good, or intollerable to be vsed, whiche were daungerous, and whiche were vtterlie to be exchued. The which thing I haue not onlye so done, but ouer this, haue therebnto adioyned and annexed dyuers other more experimented and more famlier medicines. And farther haue in the fyrst booke set foorth, and evidently declared, all the inward partes of women (suche as were necessarye to be knowen to our purpose) and that not onlye in wordes, but also in liuelye and expresse figures, by the whiche euery part before in the booke described, maye in maner be as exactly and clearely perceaued, as though ye were present at the cutting open or Anothomie of a dead woman.

Many thinges annexed & newely added to this booke. The contents of the first booke.

And thynke not the vtilitie and profite of this fyrst booke, and knowledge thereof to be litle or of small value, but take it as the foundation and ground, by the perceyuerance whereof, your wittes and vnderstandyng shalbe illuminate and lyghtened, the better to vnderstande, howe euerye thyng commeth to passe within your bodies in tyme of conception, of bearyng, and of byrth. And farther, by the perfect knowledge of this booke, ye shall clearely perceauie the reason of manye diseases whiche happen peculiarlye to women, and the causes thereof, by whiche perceyuerance, agayne ye shall haue the readyer vnderstandyng howe to withstand & remedie the sayde infirmities or diseases. For note ye well, that as there is no man whatsoeuer he be,

Howe profitable & first booke is.

The vtilitie of the perfect knowledge of Anothomie,

shall become an absolute and perfect Physitian, vnlesse he haue an absolute and perfect knowledge of all the inwardes and outwardes of mans and womans body: euen so shall ye neuer groundlye vnderstande the matters contayned in the seconde booke, or anye other communication, or writing, touchyng the same intent, except ye first haue true and iust cognoissaunce in the fyrst booke. Agayne when that a woman cometh to a Physitian for counsell, concernyng somethyng that maye be amisse in the parte: the aunswere of the Physitian and reasonable allegation of causes to the same infirmitie, is manye tymes obscure, darke, and straunge, to be comprehended by the woman, for lacke of due knowledge of the situation, maner, and fashion of the inwardes. And truely when a person is sicke or diseased in anye part, it is halfe a comfort, yea halfe his health to vnderstand in what part the disease is, and howe that parte lyeth in the bodye. This knowledge also ministreth yet a farther ingin and policie to inuent infinitelye the better howe the medicine shoulde be applied, & after the most profitable sort ministred and set to the diseased plot. To be short, all the wittines and artificiall craftie inuention, and diuers maners of ministrations in the noble science of Physicke, procedeth and springeth of the profounde knowledge of Anothomie. Therefore mine aduise & vtter counsel is, that al women in whose handes this litle booke shall chaunce to come, with all diligence do force them selues perfectly to the vnderstandyng of this fyrst booke:

well

The coun-  
sayle of the  
auctour to  
the readers.

well assuring them that they shall not repent them of their small paynes bestowed in that behalfe. And to the ende that euery thing might be the playner and more easye to attayne vnto, I haue at the latter ende of the foresayd fyrst booke, set the figures whiche represent suche matters as were entreated of in the booke before, and also haue therto annexed a sufficient declaration and exposition by letters, of all partes and parcels conteyned in the sayde figures.

In the seconde booke we shall declare the diuers sortes and maners of the deliuerance or byrth of mankynde, and all the daungers, perils, and other cases happening to the labouryng woman at that season, with remedyes and manyfolde medicines concernyng the same, where also we haue not omitted ne left out anye medicine beyng fyrst in the olde booke, but haue in manye places rectified and amended the same, accordyng to reason and the lawes of phisicke: and besides this, haue added thereto diuers other salutarie and effectiuall medicines, suche as eyther I my selfe or other Phisitions beyng yet alyue at this day, haue experimented and practised. Furthermore, in this seconde booke ye may finde diuers remedies whereby to prouoke the termes or flowres (when that needeth) or to restrayne or stoppe the same when they issue more largely then nature doth require, with many other matters, to long here to be rehearsed.

In the thirde booke shall be entreated, of the election and choyse, by certayne signes and to-

The contents of the second booke.

Many truly experimented medicines added to this booke.

Things entreated of in the thirde booke.

hens of a good Nurse, whiche maye foster and bryng by the chylde beyng borne. Item medicines encreasynge, dimynysing, attenuatyng, engrossyng, and amendyng the mylke in the Nurses brestes. Also remedies for manye and sundrye diseases, whiche oft tymes chaunce vnto infantess after their byrth.

What is  
conteyned  
in the fourth  
booke.

In the fourth and last booke, we wyll shew what commune of conception, with the causes hyndering or fartheryng the same, shewyng certayne counsayle and remedies whereby by the grace of God the vnfruitefull maye be made more fruitefull, and impedimentes of conception, by vertue of medicines, remoued and ouercome, the woman beyng made the more apt to conceaue. And farther, in this last booke shall be vttered and sette forth certayne embelleshyng receptes, concernyng only honest & healthsome decoration and clenlynesse, alwayes moste lowable and commendable in a woman, as to scoure and cleanse the head, to cause the heere to kepe his naturall colour, to preserue the heere from fallyng away, to take away heere from certayne places, where beyng it causeth some deformitie or vnseemelynesse in a person, to subtyle and cleare the skynne in the face or other where, to remoue and do awaye spottes, frekens, and other suche lyke displeasaunt markes and tokens, to souple and mollifie the skynne beyng rugged and rough, with other moe suche lyke matters, to long here to be rehearsed, the whiche truely are not of anye prudent

dent person to be reiected, improued, or display-  
 sed, forasmuche as I teache nothyng in that  
 place, but that only whiche may make to the ho-  
 nest, comely, and commendable conseruyng and  
 maynteynyng of the inset and naturall beautie  
 in a woman, vtterly abhorryng and desying all  
 fardyng, payntyng, and counterfait cast colours,  
 whiche of some damnable and misproude peo-  
 ple be dayly vsed, suche as by all meanes possi-  
 ble seeke and searche more the abominable and  
 deuillish paynting & garish setting forth of their  
 mortall carkases (the better thereby to commend  
 it vnto the eyes of foolish & sonde men) then by  
 honest, sober, debonayze, & gentle maners so to  
 demeane their lyfe, that they may thereby rather  
 obtayne the loue, amitie, and heartie perpetuall  
 fauour first of God, & then of all honest, discrete,  
 and godly wyse men. Thus nowe to be short, I  
 haue in as compendious maner as the matter  
 would suffer, set before your eyes the cheefe and  
 principall contentes comprehended in this litle  
 volume. And now remayneth there nothyng els  
 but onlye to require the beneuolent fauour and  
 good acceptation of this my labour and paynes  
 spent in the compiling of these foresayde mat-  
 ters, praying, that as it hath ben to me payne-  
 full in the composyng thereof, so it may be both  
 pleasaunt and fruitefull to all women (for whose  
 sake & only respect it is set forth) in the readyng  
 thereof. Doubtless, I am not ignorant ne vn-  
 sure that many there are, before whose syght this  
 booke shall finde small grace, and lesse fauour.

Agaynst  
 paynting of  
 womens fa-  
 ces.

The bene-  
 uolencie of  
 the reader  
 required.

Harde to  
please man's  
iudgements

The maner  
of Poets in  
tymes past.

The diffi-  
caltie to con-  
ceale his good  
wyl of per-  
uert people.

So harde a thing it is to wyrite or endite anye  
matter whatsoeuer it be, that shoulde be able to  
sustayne and abyde the variable iudgement, and  
to obtayne or winne the constant loue and a-  
lo waunce of euerye man, especiall ye yf it con-  
teyne in it any noueltie or bñwont strangenes.  
Therefore the auncient Poetes in tymes passed,  
when that they enterprised anye new or straunge  
workes, were wont in the frunt of the same,  
with greate protestation, to inuocate and call  
vpon all the goddes and goddesses by name, re-  
quiring them fauourably to aspyre, ayde, and  
prosper theyr attempted purpose, to the ende  
that by theyr obteyned fauour, it myght be the  
more acceptable and gracious to all suche as  
shoulde it beholde and reade. Whose example  
ryght necessary and needefull it were that I here  
shoulde deuoutly ensue and folowe, so that I  
coulde first beleue that by suche maner of inuo-  
cation, myght be allured and wonne the bene-  
uolencie and wyllyng fauour of all suche in  
whose handes this present booke shoulde happen  
to fall. But truely I do suppose, that although  
I shoulde call downe all the nine noble Muses  
out of the famous mount of Hellicon, or praye  
to be assistent the thre louyng graces, or great  
Apollo, god, maister, and cheefe inuentour of  
the nature of all hearbes and other medicines:  
or Esculapius cheefe patrone and president in  
the worthye science of Phisicke: or wittie Mer-  
curie with his doulce and sugred eloquencie,  
with sweete Suada, goddesse of all perswasion,  
with

with all other the goddes and goddesses: what  
 ever they be, in whom ingenious Poetes do  
 saigne to be a maiestie, myght, and power, to  
 encline the heartes of men for to delyte and take  
 pleasure in any suche thyng whiche fyrst shalbe  
 by their godhead allowed and fauoured. Though  
 (I say) all these shoulde firmelye conspyre in one  
 together, and bende them vtterly to the moste of  
 theyr hygh puissaunce, to sacre, halowe, yea and  
 with their holye poeticall spirite to breateh ouer  
 this booke, yet shoulde there be founde people  
 of so ingrate, straunge, peruers, and waywarde  
 wittes, that woulde (without all good reason)  
 blame and improue the same binneth yet seene,  
 and mucche lesse read. For who be they that geue  
 so precipitat and headye iudgementes in all ma-  
 ner of matters, as suche (for the more parte) the  
 whiche therein shall haue leaste cognoissaunce  
 or knowledge, and take least payne in reading  
 or searchoyng the heritie of that thyng agaynste  
 the whiche they be moste stoute, doughtie, and  
 bolde pronouncers. And this do I not say on-  
 ly of them, that peraduenture shall here and  
 there in the processe of this booke fynde any  
 perticuler matters to reprove, and carpe, some-  
 tymes worthyllye, and sometymes otherwyse:  
 but also, yea, and that mucche more of them,  
 whiche generally without all exception, shall  
 condemne and vtterlye reprove all the whole  
 matter, some alleagyng that it is thame, and  
 other some, that it is not meete ne syttyng  
 suche

The lyght  
 iudgements  
 of many me

stouthe  
 saynges of  
 the whiche

Of them  
 that vtterly  
 do cōdemne  
 this booke.

suche matters to be entreated of, so playnely in our mother and bulgare language, to the dishonour (as they say) of womanhead, and the derision of their wont secretes, by the detection and discoueryng whereof, men it readyng or hearyng, shalbe moued thereby the more to abhorre and lothe the companie of women, and farther, in their communications to ieste and boude of womens priuities, not wont to be knownen of them, with diuers other suche like cauillations and reasons: so that their opinion it is, that it were more expedient and better to suppress and vtterlye to condemne vnto darkenesse for euer this booke, then to sende it forth into lyght. Loe, suche is the lyght iudgement of them, the which in euery thyng, whereof may ensue both good and euyl, haue alwayes theyr eyes walkyng and firmly affixed and directed bypon the euyl, pychyng and choosyng out the worst of euery matter, omitting and leauyng to speake of the beste, as the thyng which were nothyng to their purpose. If euerye thyng in this worlde shoulde be wayed and passed bypon after this sort, then shoulde we be fayne to condemne and banyshe those thynges farre from vs, whiche are at this tyme accompted and taken for the most necessarie, worthe, and of greatest price or estimation. For to be short, there is nothyng vnder heauen so good, but that it maye be peruerted and turned to an euyl vse, by them that be euyl and naught them selues,

and.

advised  
 a man  
 in good  
 Answer  
 to certayne  
 cauillations.

nothing so  
 good but it  
 may be abu-  
 sed.



and do abuse it: ne is there any thyng so absolute and perfecte, but by the occasion of the abuse thereof, at one tyme or other, may and doth ensue great daunger and damage to mankynde. fyre and water be two ryght necessarye elementes to the vse of man, without the whiche we coulde not lyue: yet by the meanes of them, many a miserable deede hath ben done, and perpetrated. By fyre hath ben consumed and deuoured whole Cities and Countreys. By water, swalowed and drowned infinite men, shippes, yea and whole regions. Agayne, meate and drynke, to the moderate vlers thereof, doth minister and mayntayne lyfe: And contrary, to the vnmeasurable and vnfaciat gourmautes and gluttons, it hath full many thousand times brought surfertes, sicknesse, and at the laste death. By weapons, Realmes and Cities be defended from the iniurie and violencie of theyr fierce enemies, the true wayfaryng man from the assault of the theefe: Yea and many tymes cleane contrary, by weapons Realmes and Cities be subuerted and vtterlye destroyed, the true mans throte by the theefe cutte. The most holye and sacred Byble teacheth nothyng but holynesse and vertuous lyuyng, charitie to God and to our neyghbour, reformation of our wicked lyuyng, and brecfelye, the hye waye to GOD. The blessed Sacrament of the atter was instituted and ordeyned by our Saviour Iesus Christe, for a principall, earnest, lyuely, and mooste presente consolation and

Fyre & water abused.

Meate and drynke abused.

Weapons abused.

The Bible abused.

The blessed Sacrament may be abused.

comfort

and comfort of mans conscience; yet both holye Scripture, and also the foresayde holye Sacrament, haue ben, be, and wyll be, the confusion and condemnation of a greate number of the abusers and indigne or vnworthy receauers of them both. Shoulde men, for the auoydyng all these foresayde inconueniences, and for the reasons abouesayde, condemne and banny the fyre and water, forsake their meate and drynke, suppress and forbyd all maner of weapons, abolish and set asyde the holye Scripture, denye or vnrregarde the blessed Sacrament? No, it were but madnesse once to thinke it. Therefore I say, the iudgement of that eye can neuer be egall and indifferent, whiche hath more respect and regarde alwayes to the displeasures and hurtes possible to happen (onlye through the misuse of a thyng) then to the emolumentes and profites daylye and commonlye lyke to ensue to the well vsers of the same, that that of it selfe is good, is neuer to be disallowed for the sake of them that do abuse it. For as the Apostle also doeth testifie: To them that be good them selfe, euery thyng turneth to good, what euer it be is to them a sufficient matter and occasion therein to seeke the gloze of God, and the onlye profite of they; euen Christen. And contrary, suche as be of yll disposition, in euerye thyng (be it neuer so good and salutarie) picketh out matter of maynteynauce to they; lewdenesse, turning matters of sadnesse and discretton, to foolyshe and pyryshe prating contention.

Wherefore

All hole  
iudgements  
can neuer  
be indiffe-  
rent.

To y good  
euery thyng  
turneth to  
good.

The condi-  
tion of such  
as be yll.

wherefore considering that there is nothing in this worlde so necessary, ne so good, holye, or vertuous, but that it maye by wickednesse be abused, it shalbe no great wonder though this little booke also, made, wrytten, and set foorth for a good purpose, yet by lyght and lewde persons be vsed contrary to godlynesse, honestie, or content of the wryter thereof. The abusion of this booke (in my simple iudgement) consisteth onely in these two poyntes. The one is, least that some yll disposed person shoulde wickedly abuse suche medicines as be here declared for a good purpose, to some deuyllishe and lewde vse. What I meane by the lewde vse of them, they that haue vnderstandyng, ryght soone wyll perceaue.

wherein this booke may be abused.

The seconde poynt is, least that this booke hap- penyng into any lyght marchauntes handes, shoulde minister matters vnto suche, to deuyse of these thynges at vnset and vnseemely tymes, to the derision or ashaming of suche women as shoulde be in presence. ac. To these reasons can I make no better aunswere, then hath ben alledged before. Notwithstandyng, yet I say that I trust, yea, and do not doubt, but that this booke shall be so discretely diuided abrode, that none of them shall fall in any suche persons handling.

The second poynt.

No light persons shal haue any of these booke.

Agayne, yf any do chaunce to them, I am sure they wyll as soone reade this Prologue, as the rest of this booke, the which thing when they shall do, here shall they heare of me, that they be in theyr doynge neyther honest, good, ne godly, but speakyng vnreuerently, contemp- tuously,

Of foolish  
and lewde  
talkers.

Some wold  
that neither  
honest ne  
vnhonest  
shold haue  
this booke.

tuously and vntymely of suche thinges, they do  
great iniurie, dishonour, and contumelye to na-  
ture: for he that declareth anye thyng in man  
or woman, priuie or apart, talkyng and rehear-  
sing it in reproche, derision, or confusion of his  
euen Christen, can not be excused of mortall  
and deadly sinne, for so muche as contumel-  
ouslye he ashameth and confoundeth his euen  
Christen, wherewith he byngeth hym out of  
paciencie, mouyng hym to yre, and vengeaunce,  
in rehearsing of suche thinges, and after suche  
sorte, as he knoweth shoulde agreeue and bere  
his mynde: wherfore for suche deedes, he shal  
not be accounted of the number of honeste and  
sage persons, but of the lyght and lewde. Yet  
another sorte is there, whiche woulde that nei-  
ther honeste ne vnhoneste men shoulde see this  
booke, for because (as they saye) be a man neuer  
so honest, yet by readyng heare of thinges to them  
before vnknewen, they shall conceaue a cer-  
tayne lothsomnes and abhorring towardes a  
woman. To these I aunswere, that I knowe  
nothyng in woman so priuie ne so secrete, that  
they shoulde neede to care who knewe of it, nei-  
ther is there any part in woman more to be ab-  
horred, then in man. And yf the knowledge of  
suche thynges whiche commonlye be called the  
womans priuities, shoulde diminishe the hear-  
tie loue and estimation of a woman in the  
minde of man, then by this reason, Phisitions  
and Chyrurgians wyues shoulde greatly be ab-  
horred and misbeloued of their husbandes. And I  
my

# The prologue.

my selfe lyke wyse, whiche wryteth this booke,  
shoulde maruaylouslye aboute manye other ab-  
horre or lothe women. But to be thort, there  
is no suche thyng, neither any cause therto why.  
wherefore all suche slender reasons set apart, let  
no woman be greued who shall see or beholde  
this booke: for yf the partie be lewde, vnhappy  
and knauithe that shall reade it, here I am sure  
he shall learne neither lewdenes, vnhappynes,  
ne knauerye. Howebeit, generally to all men, in  
whose handes this booke shall chaunce to come,  
I counsayle and exhorte, that they take not vp-  
pon them to talke of any thynges therein con-  
tayned, but onlye where it may edifie, and be  
assuredly well accepted.

So matter  
who reade  
this booke.

Therhorta-  
tion to all  
readers.

For women lightly wyll not gladlye heare of  
suche matters, by anye man vnlesse it be a Phi-  
sition of whom they require counsayle, or of  
theyr discrete husbandes. It shall be no dis-  
pleasure to anye honeste and louyng woman,  
that her husbände shoulde reade suche thynges:  
for manye men there be of so gentle and louyng  
nature towarde their wyues, that they wyll be  
more diligent and carefull to reade or seeke  
out anye thyng that shoulde do theyr wyues  
good, being in that case, then the women them-  
selues. Briefly, I require all readers hereof, to  
interpretate and consture euerye thyng herein  
contayned, accordyng to the beste, and to vse  
euerye thyng herein entreated of, to the pur-  
pose wherefore it was wrytten. For truelye as  
for

The consy-  
deration  
why this  
booke was  
set forth.

This booke  
set forth in  
many other  
languages.

for my part consydering the manyfolde, daylye,  
and imminent daungers and perilles the whiche  
all maner of women of what estate or degree so  
euer they be, in their labours do sustayne and  
abyde, yea, many times with peryll of theyr lyfe  
(of the whiche there be to many examples neede-  
lesse here to be rehearsed) I thought it shoulde  
be a verye charitable and laudable deede, and  
ryght thankfully to be accepted of all honou-  
rable and other honest matrones, yf by my  
paynes this little treatise were made to speake  
Englyshe, as it hath ben long syth taught to  
speake Dutche, frenche, Spanyshe, and dyuers  
other languages. In the whiche countreys  
there be fewe women that can reade, but they  
wyll haue one of these bookes alwayes in rea-  
dynes, where also this and other suche bookes be  
as commonly solde at euerye Stacionars shop,  
as anye other booke. The same commoditie then  
and profite whiche they in their regions do ob-  
tayne by enioying of this litle booke in theyr  
maternall language, may also ensue vnto all  
women in this noble Realme of Englande, it  
beyng lykewyse sette forth in our Englyshe  
speache, so that to them whiche diligently wyll  
aduert and geue heede to the instructions of  
this litle booke, it may supplie the roome and  
place of a good midwyfe, and aduise them ma-  
ny tymes of sundrye cases, chaunces, and reme-  
dyes, wherein peraduenture ryght wyse wo-  
men and good midwyfes shalbe full ignoraunt.

And

And truely (as I haue ben credibly enfourmed  
 by diuers persons worthye to be beleued) there  
 be syth the first setting forth of this booke, right  
 many honourable Ladies, and other worshipful  
 Gentyll women, whiche haue not disdayned the  
 oftener by the occasion of this booke, to fre-  
 quent and haunt women in theyr labours, ca-  
 rryng with them this booke in theyr handes,  
 and causyng suche part of it as doth cheefely con-  
 cerne the samie purpose, to be read before the  
 Mydwyfe, and the reste of the women then be-  
 yng present, whereby oft tymes, then all haue  
 ben put in remembraunce of that, wherewith  
 the labouryng woman hath ben greatlye con-  
 forted, and alleuiated of her thronges and tra-  
 uayle: whose laudable example and doynges,  
 woulde **GOD** that many proude Mydwyues  
 woulde ensue and solowe, among the whiche,  
 as there be many ryght expert, diligent, wyle,  
 circumspect and tender about suche busynesse as  
 apperteyneth to theyr office: So be there a-  
 gayne many mo full vndiscrete, vnrasonable,  
 cholerike, and farre to seeke in suche thynges, the  
 whiche shoulde cheefely helpe and succoure the  
 women in theyr mozte paynefull labour and  
 thronges, through whose rudenesse and rash-  
 nesse onlye, I doubt not but that a great num-  
 ber of women in theyr labour speede worse then  
 needed otherwyle. But here nowe let not the  
 good Mydwyues be offended with that, that is  
 spoken of the badde. For verily there is no sci-  
 ence, but that it hath his Apes, Owles, Beres,

Howe La-  
 dyes & gen-  
 till women  
 haue vsed  
 this booke.

Of Myd-  
 wyues.

In euery  
 science ther  
 be of all soz-  
 tes.

and Asses, whiche as aboue all other haue most neede of information and teaching, so most commonly agayne, more then any other, wyll they kycke and wynce agaynst suche as woulde them reforme or reduce to any better way then they haue ben accustomed to in tymes past. And this do I say, for because that at the fyrst comyng abroade of this present booke, many of this sort of Mydwynes, moued eyther of enuie, or els of mallice, or both, diligented and endeouored them very earnestly, by all wayes possible, to fynde the meanes to suppressse and abrogate the same, makyng all women of theyr acquaintance (whom they thought to haue any knowledge thereof) to beleue that it was nothyng worth, and that it shoulde be a slaunder to women, forsomuche as therein was descried and set forth the secretes and priuities of women, and that euerye boye and knaue hadde of these bookes, reading them as openly as the tales of Robin hood. &c. The whiche sayinges, as they were false, and vnttrue, and malitious allegations onlye of euyll hearted persons, to whom it was great greefe, that any by readyng thereof, shoulde see or vnderstande more then they hadde knowledge of before: So is it very soothe and true, that ryght dyuers of the better and more sober sort, were thereof full fayne and glad, and berre desyrous to haue of them, and gaue saythfull counsell also vnto women of theyr familiar knowledge, to heare the booke read by some other, or els (suche as coulde) to reade it  
 them

Some Mydwines would haue had this booke forbydden.

The false surmises of the inauentent.

The good Mydwines wer glad of this booke.



# The prologue.

them selues. Whose honest and vertuous industry in that behalfe, as it doth merite and deserue the laude and prayse of all them that be laudable them selfe: euen so is the fylthye and byle ingratitude and dispituous enuye of the maleuolent, to be detested and vtterlye abhorred of all people: Whose malignaunt wittes, yf they myght preuaile of theyr purpose, woulde they the good courages of all honest interpreters, in those matters and all other. And

Enuy and  
vntbankful  
nes to be  
abhorred.

thus I conclude and make an ende

of this rude Prologue, requi-

ring the gentle readers

therof, that yf they

shall fynde any

thing ther-

in inter-

pretable to diuers senses, to ac-

cept only that whiche may

make to the best, accor-

dyng to my mea-

nyng.

C 2

In this first Chapter is breiefely  
declared the contentes of the  
first booke.



Although that many thinges entreated of in this first booke, shal seeme vnto some not very necessary to the vnderstandyng of the seconde booke, yet then contrary do I ensure and certifie (as I haue sufficiently sayd in the Prologue) that the ignorant in the first, shalbe full blynde in the seconde, to the whiche, the first is as a key, opening and clearing the matters to be intreated of in the seconde.

The vtilitie  
of the first  
booke.

The con-  
tentis of  
this booke.

In this first booke then shalbe declared the fourme, maner, and situation of the inwarde partes of a woman, suche as are in them by nature dedicate and assigned to the propogation, conception, and bearyng of mankynde. In whō truely is the receptacle, & as ye woulde say, the campe or seelde of mankynde to be engendred therein. And although that  
that

that man be as principall motuer and cause of the generation : yet (no displeasure to men) the woman doth conferre and contribute muche more, What to the encreasement of the chylde in her wombe, and what to the nourishment thereof after the byrth, then doth the man. And doubtlesse, yf a man woulde demaunde to whom the chylde oweth most his generation: He may worthyly make aunswere, that to the mother, whether ye regarde the paynes in bearyng, other els the conferrence of mooste matter in begettyng.

The womā conferreth more the generatiō then man.

Furthermore, in this booke ye shall reade certaine thinges, which in tymes passed haue ben corruptly, negligently, yea and very falsely wrytten of, and of the whiche both men, yea and women them selues, haue conceaued very erroneous and misopinions, as ye shall farther perceaue in the processe.

Many thinges falsly wryttē in tymes past.

Nowe therefore that we come to the declaration of the Organs generatiue in woman, it shalbe necessary to the bet-

fer vnderstandyng thereof, fyrste to shewe the description of certayne thynges, without whose knowledge, this treatyse woulde be manye tymes the more obscure and darke.

**I**n howe many coates the body is lapped or inuolued. Cap. ii.

The principall coates of the body.



The body of man or woman is inuolued or compassed vniuersally with three principall coates. Of the whiche, the first and vttermost is called the skinne, in Latine

Cutis, with whom generally every part of the body is clad and inclosed, the whiche yet in some part is more softe, delicate, and thinne, then in some other, and in some one person more stowre & styffe, then in some other agayne, for causes needelesse here to be rehearsed.

The superficial skinne

And ye shall note, that vpon the outward face and superficie of this skinne, there is yet another thinner skynne, in Latine

Latine commonly named Cuticula, & of some Efflorescentia cutis. This thinne skin is it, the which ye see ryse lyke a bladder when any part of the bodye is blistered with fyre or hot water, so that betwene this thinne skin and the very skinne, is contained the water which resorteth to the place by the violence of the fyre or heat, the which thin skin also we vse to pricke to let the water issue forth: also the same that skaleth or pylleth of the hands or other partes of the body being scabbed & begynnyng to drye. Item the skin that the Adders do cast in the sommer time, is the foresaid thin superfici- all skin, & not the verye substanciall skyn of the body in deede. For the verye skyn neuer pylleth ne falleth of but by great violēce, as by slaying, lyke as beastes be slayne at the butchers, & as they slay conies. And againe, the thin or superficiall skin, skale it or fal it of neuer so often, yet in the place of it is reingendred new; as good allwayes as the former. But if the second and very skin be perished, by

The verye skin skaleth not of.

The verye  
skin pers-  
shed, neuer  
restored.

cutting or apostumation, or by other casualtie, it wyl neuer be restored to his olde perfection agayne, but shall shewe alwayes in the place where it is, as it were a seame, skarre, or marke, smothe and harder then the other skynne, and without naturall powers.

The second  
coate.

The fleshye  
skynne.

The seconde inuestiture or clothyng of the body, is named the fleshye skin, in Latin *Membrana carnosa*, so called, for because that it conteyneth and is compassed of fleshyenes, then any other kell or skin in all the bodie, & is, as it were, the lynyng to the foresaide *Cutis*, that is the very skin immediatly aboue hym, the very skin and it beyng both basted together, by a great number of small fybrs or cordes enterlasing these two skynnes, so that with great payne vnneth may they be separated the one frō the other. And farther, betwene these two skyns runne a great number of baynes, artires, and skynnes, in every part of the body, so that the great baynes whiche appeare so manifestly to your syght in  
the

the armes, temples, handes, legges, feete, and other places, runne betweene the proper skinne and the fleshy skinne, this beyng to them as a bedde, and that as a couerlet.

The thirde coate of the bodye, is the fatte, in Latine *Adeps*, the which doeth so generally in euery parte of the bodye inuolue and wrappe the same as the other two coates: but yet the man or woman beyng in any reasonable lykyng, it is founde in euery part (except fewe) as the forehead, the temples, the backes of the handes and feete, with certayne other places needelesse here to be resited, and doth entercurre and run betweene the two foresayde skinnes, receauyng & embrasyng in it selfe the small bastyng fibres, the vaines, artires, and sinnes, which (as I sayd before) be deriued from the one skin to the other: And the greater foyson of fat that there is betweene the two skinnes, the lesse be the vaines intercurring betweene them, conspicuous or sensible to the eye (thabundance

The thirde coate, is the fatte.

Stoze of fat letteth the shewe of the vaines.

of

of fat Drownyng & coueryng the great-  
nes of them) the which also in the selfe  
same place of a leaner oz sparer person,  
shalbe seene very great, and as it were  
swollen baynes, in comparison of the  
fatter. Itē, vnderstande ye that in some  
part of the body, naturally fatnes doth  
abound much more then in other some,  
as in the belly lyghtly the fatte is two  
fingers thicke & more: and in women  
that be meanelly fat, in the thyes & buc-  
tockes this fatte is of thre, yea foure  
fyngers thycknes, which (as I sayde a-  
boue) alwayes hath his place betweene  
the foresayde two skynnes.

Fat in some  
part, more  
then some.

Nowe immediatlye vnder the fleshy  
skyn, be contayned the Muskles of the  
body, so that the inner face oz superficie  
of the fleshy skin, wherwith it toucheth  
the Muskles, is alwayes bedewed with  
a certayne slymye moysture, by whiche  
meanes the foresayde Muskles mouing  
and styrryng vnder the said fleshy skyn,  
be the freer, & haue the lesse impediment  
oz let in theyr motion, & verye easie it is  
to

What is  
contayned  
next vnder  
the fleshy  
skynne.



to separate this skin from the Muskles.

Here is declared what the Muskles be. Cap. iiii.



The Muskles of mans body be called the mouyng cordes and fleshye strynges, whereby any member of the bodye is mooued to oz fro, bywarde oz downeward, oz turned rounde. As for example. If ye close, oz other wyse do moue either of your handes, and in closyng oz mouyng it with the other hande do feele the wreste of that hande, ye shall sensibly perceauē as it were certayne cordes mouyng vnder the skinne, the whiche be called Muskles, in Latin *Musculi*. To discusse curiously the nature oz occasion of the name of Muskles, is not for this place. Here it is sufficient to vnderstand what is meant by the name. Yet note ye well, that wheresoeuer there is great store of Muskles, and cheefely in the myddle parte of them, there is also greate plentie of fleshē, enterlardyng

What is meant by the name of Muskles.

The Mus-  
kles enter-  
mingled  
with aethe.

lardyng & entermynglyng it selfe with  
the Muskles, & as it were conbyndyng,  
colligatyng, or knyttyng together the  
Muskles, not so yet, but that neuerthe-  
lesse they haue theyr free motion.

All other places of the bodye leste a-  
part and vnmentioned of, here wyll I  
onlye declare a litle of the Muskles of  
the belly, forsomuch as theyr operation  
is sometymes conferent and appertey-  
nyng to the matters that we entend of.

The Mus-  
kles of the  
belly.

Ouer the amplitude of the bellye,  
next vnder the fleshy kell or skyn, be.iiii.  
Muskles, eche situate and sette vnder o-  
ther, of the whiche, the vppermost im-  
mediately touchyng the fleshy skyn, be  
called the Vyalwyle descendyng Mus-  
kles, in Latin *Musculi obliqui descendentes*.  
Of these Muskles there be two, in eche  
syde of the belly one, so that these two  
Vyalwyle descendyng Muskles meete  
together in the middle region of the bel-  
ly, and be extended or spread ouer al the  
amplitude of the belly, shapyng thereto  
as it were another coate.

The

The seconde Muskles be named the byaswyle ascendyng Muskles, in Latin, *Musculi obliqui ascendentes*, whose being is immediatly next vnder the inner face of the first Muskles. Of these also as of the firste, in eche syde or coaste of the belly is there one.

The third sort of the belly Muskles, as they be situate in order, the one vnder the other, be called the ryght Muskles, in Latin, *Musculi recti*, which be double as the other two before.

The ryght Muskles.

The fourth be nominated the overthwart Muskles, in Latin, *Musculi transuersi*, because they transuerse or overthwart the belly. In eche side likewise of whom, ther is one of these Muskles, which in the middle lyne of the belly encountre eche other, as I haue sayde of the aboue named three Muskles, so that the byaswyle ascendyng, and the byaswyle descendyng with the overthwart Muskles, do eche of them couer and compasse all the whole breadth of the bellye, but so do not the ryght Muskles,

The overthwart Muskles.

The vse of  
the foure  
belly Mus-  
cles.

kles, for the breadth of them is but  
small in comparison of the other. All  
these foure Muskles be to the entrayles  
and bowels within the belly, as foure  
seuerall coates, by the vertue and helpe  
of whom, together with the ayde of  
the midriffe, all expulsion both byward  
and downwarde in the guttes, in the  
stomacke, in the matrix of the woman  
in the tyme of labour, and also in the  
bladder in tyme of making of water,  
is wrought, and yet besydes this vtili-  
tie, they clothe (as I haue sayde) de-  
fende, fortifie, and strength the inwar-  
des of the bellye.

**C** Of the Kell, called Peritoneum.

Capit.iiii.



**V**nder the laste Muskle of the  
belly, called the ouerthwarte  
Muskle, immediatlye succee-  
deth a certaine thin rime, kell,  
or skin, named in Latin, Peritoneum, whi-  
che compasseth rounde the amplitude  
and

The Peri-  
toneum and  
his office.

and largeour of the bellye, takyng his  
 originall at the bynders of the loyne  
 bones, and from thence dilatyng and  
 spreading it selfe abroade, vnderlyne-  
 the ouerthwart Muskles, the midriffe,  
 & part of the short ribbes. To be short,  
 this rime vnderlyne the whole ca-  
 uitie, holonesse, or amplitude of the bel-  
 lye, from the midriffe to the flankes or  
 share, immediatly contaynyng and in-  
 uoluing in it selfe all the whole conten-  
 tes of the belly, euen as the skin next vn-  
 der the shell of an egge enuironeth and  
 compasseth immediatly all the contay-  
 ned meate of an egge. And as for <sup>Perito-</sup>neum,  
 doth not onely inuolue all the en-  
 trayles of the belly in his compasse, but  
 also yeeldeth vnto eche entrayle a coate  
 and webbe of the cloth of his owne bo-  
 die, by the which his liuery, they be the  
 more arctly & strayghtly affixed or faste-  
 ned vnto him selfe, and farther in them-  
 selues the stronger within the cauitie  
 of the belly: and vnder this <sup>Peritoneum</sup>, be  
 contayned these bowels folowynge.

The vse &  
 profit of the  
 Peritone-  
 um.

First

Wolues co-  
fayned vn-  
der the Pe-  
ritoneum.

First the stomacke, which is the first receptacle and receauer of the foode or meate chawed and mashed before in the mouth, from thence descendyng ouer the Winde pype, doWne along the stomacke gut, and so consequently into the stomacke, then the Kell, in Latin Omentum, the liuer, the splene or melt, the bladder, and the matrix, then yet the guttes, vnder the guttes the kydnees, the maister bayne, and the maister artire. But here we shal begyn fyrst to entreate of the matrix, as the part which maketh cheefely to our purpose.

**T**he declaration of the names  
and nature of the Matrix.

Capit. v.

Byuers  
names of  
the Matrix.

**H**ere ye shall vnderstande, that these thre wordes, the Matrix, the Mother, and the wombe, do signifie but one thing, that is to say, The place wherein the seede of man is conceaued, fetified, conserued, nourished, & augmented, vnto the tyme  
of

Deliveraunce, in Latine, named *uterus*  
 & *Matrix*. The necke of this Wombe, o-  
 therwyle called the womans priuie,  
 We Wyll call the Wombe passage, or the  
 priuie passage, in Latin *Ceruex vteri*, & *pu-*  
*dendum muliebre*, the extreme end, or y<sup>e</sup> first  
 entraunce of this priuie or Wombe pas-  
 sage, ye shall name the passage port, for  
 because that it is the port gate, or en-  
 traunce of that passage, or way into the  
 Wombe or matrix, in Latin, *Vulua*, i. *vulua*.

The Wombe passage then or the necke  
 of the Wombe, taketh his beginnyng at  
 the passage port, and from thence sty-  
 eth and mounteth ryght bywarde vn-  
 der the sharebone lyke a great conduct,  
 varyng in length & breadth accordng  
 to the age of the woman.

To make especiall mention of the  
 length of this Wombe passage, were but  
 follie, for the diuersitie thereof. Not-  
 withstandyng in women it is esteemed  
 of the length of .x. .xi. .xii. or .xiii. fingers  
 bredth, some more, some lesse. And this  
 we may say, that nature hath so prouid-

The necke  
 of the Ma-  
 trix.

*length Common yered 8. or 9.  
 inches. English Treasur  
 p. 52.*

Di ded

ded that it is of sufficient length, to  
ceane the priuie part of man, in the ge-  
neration, directing the same towarde  
the Wombe porte, through the whiche  
the seede is naturally sent from the man  
into the Wombe or mother, thereto hel-  
ping an attractife power, Whiche is in-  
set and geuen to the Wombe, to attract  
and drawe towarde it selfe the seede  
parted from the man (so that there be  
no other let.)

**C** Of the Wombe and his partes.

Cap. vi.



**T**he head or vpper ende of  
this Wombe passage, is si-  
tuate the Wombe it selfe,  
Whiche in Woman beyng  
not with childe is very lit-  
tle, contract and drawen together, so

The womb  
or matrix in  
women not  
with chylde  
contracted.

that the amplitude or largenes thereof,  
passeth not the amplitude and largenes  
of the priuie passage, the whiche thyng  
to some may seeme vncredible, yet by  
Anothomie ye maye see it to be true.

And



And for all this contraction or drawing so nere together of the matrix, the out-  
 syde of it is very smothe, moyst, gliste-  
 ryng, and reddishe, as it were a litle  
 redde tempered With a great Deale of  
 Whyte, the insyde also of the matrix is  
 smothe: yea, and though that the ma-  
 trix (as we haue said) be full of riuels or  
 Wrinkles, by the reason that it is so con-  
 tract, from a great amplitude or large-  
 nes (as may be seene in the wombe or  
 matrix of women With chylde) to this  
 litle compasse, yet maye a body scarce  
 perceauie in this inner side any Wrinkle,  
 (albeit that there be infinite) they be so  
 finely and nere drawn together.

This contraction of the matrix, no  
 doubt was made by nature, for these  
 causes, partlye that at suche tyme that  
 the woman is not With chylde, it should  
 occupie the lesse roome in the belly, but  
 cheefely that in tyme of conception of  
 the seede, the litle bolke or quantitie  
 of the sayde seede, at his first concea-  
 uying into the womans mother, may

The cause  
 of the con-  
 traction of  
 the matrix.

The first booke.

be touched rounde about euery Where of the mother, and as ye Woulde saye, amplexed oz embrased, and containned (as the nut shell containneth immediatlye the nut) of the inner Walles oz face of the matrix, and as the seede is viuified, shaped, and doth encrease, so doth the amplitude of the matrix enlarge and waxe bygger, so that at the laste, When the infant commeth to his full groweth, oz When the woman is great With chylde, then this coate oz kell of the matrix is as thinne as a bladder, Where that in tyme of his contraction, oz When the woman is not With childe, the coate oz wall of the matrix is as good as halfe an inche thicke.

Howe the  
matrix varieth  
in thicknes & thinnes  
of his coate.

The founde  
of the Matrix.

Howe ye shall vnderstande, that the founde oz bottome of the matrix is not perfectly rounde bowlyse, but rather lyke the foyme of a mans heart, as it is paynted, sauing that the partition oz clifte in the matrix betweene both corners, the ryght and the lefte, is not so profoundlye dented inwards as the clift

clyfte in the hearte : For in the inwarde  
 vault, cavitie, or holonesse of the ma-  
 trix, there is a certayne seame, Whiche  
 begynnyng in the middle of the fore-  
 part of the matrix, at the wombe port,  
 doth passe forth by that foresyde, & so by  
 the bottome to the hynder syde of the  
 matrix, & from thence along downe to  
 the wombe port on the backsyde, as ye  
 may more evidently see in the figure  
 hereof. This seame then is as it were a  
 litle separation, marke, or limitie, diui-  
 dyng the wombe in two equall partes  
 or sydes, the ryght and the lefte. Not-  
 withstandyng, in the matrix there is  
 but one vault, cavitie, holonesse, or am-  
 plitude, the foresayde seame beyng but  
 as it were a note, signe, or scace sensi-  
 ble marke running along the sides and  
 botome of the wombe. But this seame  
 or line where it passeth the bottome of  
 the mother or wombe, is more crasse,  
 thicke, and fleshye, propendyng, hel-  
 dyng, hangyng or lokyng downeward  
 into the vaulte or amplitude of the  
 D iij      Wombe.

A certayne  
 seame deui-  
 dyng the  
 Matrix as  
 it were in  
 two partes.

In the Ma-  
 trix but one  
 holonesse.

The first booke.

Certayne  
erronious  
opinions of  
vii. selles in  
the wombe.

Wombe, the Whiche line in the sides is  
nothyng so manifeste ne sensible to be  
perceaued. Thus ye may see, that the  
myddle part of the bottome of the Ma-  
trix, is not so hye as the two corners or  
angles on both sydes be. Other distinc-  
tions or seperations in the matrix is  
there none, albeit that in tymes passed,  
diuers Clarkes haue Written, & many  
other haue beleued, that there shoulde  
be seuen selles, or seuen distinct places in  
the matrix, in thre of the which on the  
ryght side, shoulde onlye men chyldren  
be conceaued, and in the other thre on  
the left syde Women chyldren, and yf it  
chaunced that the seede were conceiued  
in the seuenth sell, which was the myd-  
delmoste, then that shoulde become a  
monster, halfe a man & halfe a woman.  
The which al is but lyes, dreames, and  
fonde fantasies. For the womans ma-  
trix, as I haue sayd, is euen as a strong  
bladder, hauing in it but one vniuersall  
holonesse, and the chyld when it lyeth  
in it, lyeth euer on the one syde more  
then

then on the other, the head beyng towardes one of the corners or angles, & not vpright toward the middle bridge.

Of the mother port. Cap. vi.



The entraunce of y<sup>e</sup> matrix or womb, is named y<sup>e</sup> womb porte or mother port, the which in substance & fashion, muche doeth resemble

Of the mother porte, & the situatio thereof.

y<sup>e</sup> fourme of an haukes bel, or other litle moyses bels, sauing that it is much bygger, hauing a clift ouerthwart the body therof, as ye may more plainly perceiue by y<sup>e</sup> figure hereof. And this port of the matrix is of substance more thicke and crasse then the rest of the same, & as it were a kernell rounde & clift in the midst. This womb porte also is fastened & affixed to the vpper ende of the wombe passage, as all the rest of the wombe is.

D iij How

The first booke.

Howe be it, the middle parte of the wombe port or the snowt therof, where it bosseth downeward, doth touche no side nor part of the wombe passage, but onely heldeth pendande wyse, or loketh downewarde: and where as at suche tyme that the man companyeth with the woman, the priuie passage is dilated & opened to the quantitie of mans priuie part, yet notwithstanding, the mouth of the clift of the wombe port is not moued thereby ne dilated: excepte that it be at suche tyme that the matrix beyng apt and disposed thereto, and other conditions requisite, this wombe port do naturallye open it selfe, attractyng, drawyng, and suckyng into the wombe the seede, by a vehement and naturall desyre.

The wombe  
wel disposed  
naturallye  
attacteth  
the seede.

Notwithstanding, when the seede is conceaued in at this wombe port, it doth not alwayes remayne there, but manye tymes issueth out agayne for some indispotion founde other in the place or in the seede it self. Albeit yf the seede be  
retayn

retayned styll in the matrix, then doeth the wombe port close it selfe so fast and so firmly, that the poynt of a nedle can not enter in thereat without violence, and so doth remayne vntyll the tyme of deliuerance, at what tyme agayne it dilateth and openeth it self, in such amplitude and largenesse, that it is wonderfull to speake of.

The closenes of the matrix after the seede conceived,

**C** Of the vessels of seede, called the stones, with other therto appertayning.

Cap. viii.



**O**f eche syde of the matrix lieth a stone, which both be called the womans stones, wherein is engendred the seede & sparme that cometh from the woman, not so stronge, firme, and mightie in operation as the seede of man, but rather weake, fluy, colde, and moyste, and of no great firmitie: howbeit, as conuenient and proper for the purpose for the whiche it was ordeyned, as the seede of man for his

The first booke.

his purpose. These stones be nothing so bygge as the stones of man, but lesse, flatter, much fassyoned after the shape of a great and brode almond. The substance and bodye of these stones is not made massyfe, or compact and softe as mens stones be, but as it were many litle kernelles sette together, betweene the which is much holonesse, and therein conteyned a certayne thinne watery substance. This substance of the stones is inuolued & wrapped with a coate or thinne skinne, very firmly annexed to the foresayde substance, which also doth receaue into hym selfe the seede bryngers. We may name the same coate in Latine *Supergeminalis*.

Of the seede bryngers. Cap. ix.

Of the seede  
bryngers.



The seede bryngers, called in Latin *Vasa semē adferentia*, be two baynes & two artires, whiche come to these two stones, to eche one bayne and one artire, and take theyr begynnyng



nyng on this wyse.

Under the guttes (as ye may see in the figures hereof) be situate the greate maister bayne, in Latin *Cava vena*, and the great artire, *Arteria magna*. The maister bayne hath his originall of the liver, from whence it descendeth downward along the loynes, vntyll it attayne vnto the begynnyng of *Os sacrum*, where the artire (as the worthyer) begynneth to mount vpon the maister bayne, and in this place they both diuide them selues in two partes forke wyse, the ryght part of the forke proceeding into the ryght thygh & legge, the left, into the left legge, the bayne evermore associate with the artire, the which hath his beginning of the heart, from whence he is descended through the mydryffe to this place, distributing to all places whereby he passeth artires.

The office of the greate bayne is, to conduct and cary from the liver (which is the blood shoppe, where the blood is engendred

The originall of the great bayne

The office of the baynes

The first booke.

engendred) to all partes of the bodye blood, therewith to noryshe them. For to the greate bayne Where they passe, there commeth innumerable smal vaines on euery syde, euen as to the great ryuers many small streames on euerye syde do resort.

The office  
of the ar-  
tires.

The office of the artires is, to spreade abroad in the body the vitall and lyue-lye spirite, engendred in the bosome of the hearte, and to refreshe and temper the immoderate heate whiche other- wyse mought be engendred in the bodye, the whiche also sleepe we or wake we, do continuallye moue and beate, therefore the motion of them is called the pulce, and loke after what maner the heart (whiche is the well of these artires) doeth moue or stirre it selfe, and euen so do they.

The heart  
and artires  
haue two  
contrary  
motions.

The heart then and the artires thoro-  
row him, haue two contrary motions:  
one is, in closyng it selfe, and the other,  
in dilatyng and openyng of it selfe,  
whiche sorte of mouynges we call the  
beating

beating of the pulces, When the artires do open them selues, then they attract, drawe, or sucke in fresh ayre, to temper the heate of the body withall, and also spirituall and thinne pure blood. But when they close them selfe, then do they expel milkie fumes, and hoate breathes, or vnnaturall vapours, suche as of necessitie alwayes be engendred in al partes of the bodye, by the Whiche blood doth passe, for causes to long here to be alledged, neither is there anye notable bayne vnassociate of an artyre.

Nowe on the ryght side and forepart of the great vaine proceadeth a braūch, deriued from that place a longe the loynes downwardes to the head of the ryght stone, from the ryght syde lyke wyle and foreface of the great artyre, descendeth a braunche thwarting ouer the great bayne downe towardes the ryght loynes, wher it meeting with the foresayde bayne braunche, before they emplant them selfe in the head of the stone, become both as one bodye, here

The meeting  
of the bayne  
and artire.

straight

The first booke.

straight enlarging them selfe, litle and litle stepelwyle, not fully rounde, but flattithe before and behinde, with the broder ende planting & infixing themselfe into the head of the ryght stone.

And at the vpper and smaller ende, where this bayne braunche and artyze braunche do first meete, they beginne to entermingle, enbrayde, and enterlade eche other in suche infinite wyle, wythyng and diuidyng them selues in thousande of litle braunches, as it were heeres of the head, the one embrasing, compassing, and ouerthwarting the other so confusedly, that no wit can expresse the ryght maner and order of their commixtion. Call this parte then in English, the bradid body, in Latin *Varicosū formemplexum*, whose nether & broder ende, as I sayde before, affixed and implanted in the vpper head of the ryght stone, sendeth forth braunches and armes into the bodye of the same stone, manyfoldwyle dispersed, spread, and commixt.

The bradid  
body.

And

And also into the skin or couer of the stone, called before <sup>Supergeminalis</sup>, frō the saide bradid body, be there deriued manye small braunches, muche lyke vnto the litle small baynes whiche ye see reddishe in a mans eye.

And looke what discription and pro-  
cesse we haue made of the ryght syde  
seede bryngers to the ryght stone, euen  
the same vnderstand of the left side se-  
de bryngers to the left stone, sauyng that  
the bayne braunche whiche comieth  
to the left stone, most commonly taketh  
his originall of the nether syde of the  
left kydney bayne, and not immediatly  
of the great bayne as the other.

And ye shall vnderstand agayne, that  
from the foresaid bayne & artyze of eche  
side, at the place where theyz fyrst con-  
iunction or meeting is, proceadeth a cer-  
tayne braunche of the bayne, affosiate  
with the artyze, which both passe forth  
together to the found or bottome of the  
mother or matrix, of that syde where  
they stande, there delatyng and sprea-  
dyng

Waynes de-  
riued to the  
bottome of  
the matrix.

dyng them selfe abroade in manyfolde  
smaller braunches, to the nourishment  
of the body of the matrix.

**C** Of the office and vse of these seede  
bryngers. Capit. r.

The seede  
procreate of  
the vayne  
blood and  
the artiriall  
blood.

**T**hrough these seede bryngers,  
blood out of the vaynes, and  
lively spirite out of the artires  
be deriued, yea, or rather (to  
speake more properlye) attract or dra-  
we into the stones, there by vertue and  
naturall instinction of the place altered  
and chaunged, beyng fyrst confused to-  
gether the blood and the spirite, by mu-  
tuall amplexations or embracements  
of these two vesselles, the vayne and  
the artyze beyng conioyned and vnite  
in one very body, first beginning in the  
bradid body, & then after in the whole  
bodaye of the stone: So that thoro-  
we the manyfolde and infinite circulati-  
ons of the attracted matter by the con-  
duictes or vaynes infinitelye intricate  
and

and Wrythed With a thousande revolu-  
tions or turagaynes (and all in the lit-  
tle compasse of the bodye of the stones)  
the blood and spirite commixed toge-  
ther, getteth another nature and pro-  
pertie both in colour and effect.

And here ye shall vnderstande, that note the en-  
gin and po-  
licie of na-  
ture.  
moſte commonly alwayes when that  
nature is diſpoſed to make a tranſmu-  
tation of any matter, that can ſhe not  
do, vneſſe ſhe haue a mine, ſhoppe, or  
workehouſe, wherein by continuall cir-  
culatiō of the matter tranſmutable, ſhe  
may bryng her purpoſe to paſſe: Euen  
as mettalles and other minerals of the  
earth, haue they ſecrete and vniſible  
baynes, in whiche by daylye and long  
coagitation, mouyng, circulation, and  
hurling together, they be brought from  
one forme to another, & made metals  
of that the which befoze was none.

Of theſe ſort of mines, there be foure Foure  
mines in  
mans body.  
principall in the body of man.  
The firſt is the mine of blood, which is  
the lyuer, in whom the iuyce of meate,  
¶ I befoze

The first booke.

before of colour Whyte, is transmuted into red, made apt and fitte to nouryshe all partes of the bodye, attract and drawen out of the stomacke and guttes, thoro we verye small and infinite litle baynes into the lyuer.

The heart  
is the second  
mine.

The seconde mine is the heart, which of the blood attract and drawen from the great maister bayne, proceeding out of the foresayde lyuer, into his parlors, doth engender vehement and liuely spirite, comixed with depured and greatly eleborated blood, within the selles of the heart, from thence sent forth thoro we the artyres, into all partes of the body, beyng in colour yealowishe, thyn and hotte blood.

The brayne  
the thirde  
mine.

The thyrde myne is the brayne, of whom all the sinewes take theyr originall. In whom the Wittie spirite, the spirites of mouyng, and the spirites of al sensibilitie be engendred, and thoro we the sinewes sent to all partes of the bodye. For all suche partes as moue and feele, haue that by reason of sinewes de-  
riued



riued vnto those places from the head.

The fourth mine is the stones in wh<sup>ch</sup> by cōmixtion of all the other three fore-  
said metalles of the body, that is to say, bayne blood, arteriall blood, and lynely spirites engendred in the head, is engendred & produced seede, whiche bestowed in his due place, becommeth lyke a perfection to the creature from whence it came, that is to say, of mankinde, man.

The fourth mine is the stones.

But ye shall vnderstande, that the receauyng of the seede into the stones, is not that there shoulde be any one onlye caue, holownesse, sell, vaulte, or parler in the bodye of the stone, wherein it myght be receaued and retayned, lyke as the holownesse of an egge, the meate beyng out of it, or of an hasell nutte, the kernell out of it, but farre otherwylse: for the stones (chefeely in man more then in woman) be massife, not hard, but delicate and softe, as a softe kirknell, full of small & almost vn sensible white vaines, reuoluing them selfe in and out a thousand folde, and manyfold wise intricate

Howe the seede is receaued into the stones.

together, Within the Which the seede is conueyed, caryed, concocted, or digested and altered, by vertue of the White flesh, Whiche intercurrenth and intermingleth it self euery Where betwene the foresaid bayne, lyke as the earth doth intercurrenth and intermingle it selfe betwene and among the small fibres, beardes, or heares of rootes: the Whyte coate also or Walles of the said baynes, helping not a lytle to the transmutation of the colour from red to Whyte.

Howe the colour of the seede is transmuted.

Liquid thinges sauoureth of the nature of the vessels thozowe whiche it runneth.

For euery thing that is liquid, as the seede is, receaueth alwayes a nature of the place, mine, or conduite, by whiche it runneth and passeth, so that when the conduite is very small and narrowe, and long withall, then the liquour that passeth through it, receaueth and sauoureth so muche the more the nature and condition of that vessel or conduite. As for an example: If there were a conduit or pipe made of lead, whose length were ten foote, and the inner compasse, holonesse, or cavitie of the same, but so much that

that an heere myght passe through it : then say I, that a gallō oz quart of water passing and thzillyng through that narrow conduite shoulde sauour much more of the nature and qualitie of lead, then though the holownesse of the aforesayde conduite, beyng styll of the abouenamed length, were so large that a bowle might enter and passe thozowe the same. For this reason, that when the water hath to passe thozowe so narrow passage, it maketh the longer iourney, and yeeldeth the smaller threade oz streen, and therfore is touched more immediatly and intyrelly of the insydes oz inner walles of the conduite. And further, Well ye wote that a lytle quantitie is sooner ouercome & altered, then a great. As a spooneful of wine standyng all nyght in a pewter oz brasen pot, shall sauour muche more of the potte, then a pynte of the same. Lyke wyle, yf a man woulde coole hoate drynke by pouring of it out of one pot oz cup into another, sooner and more perfectly shall the cir-

A litle quantity sooner ouercome then a greater.

The policie  
of nature.

cumstant colde ayze alter and coole it,  
beyng poured out very softly, makyng  
therof a fine and small streen, then yf he  
dyd the same hastily. And truely this  
engine and pollicie doth nature vse in  
euery part where she causeth any nota-  
ble transmutation, makyng the matter  
transmutable to passe through longe  
strayghtes & narrow turagayne lanes,  
the matter bolwyng, enclinyng, and  
apting it selfe alwayes to the dispositi-  
on and nature of the vesselles thoro we  
which it cooleth or runneth, so that the  
sparme or seede of man or woman, being  
attracted by the foresaid seede byngers  
into the stons, passeth by many narrow  
strayghtes, which beyng before bayne  
blood and artire blood, by bertue of the  
places through whiche it had to passe,  
becommeth from red colour to whyte,  
& of much more perfection then it was  
before. For this transmutation of blood  
into sparme, is not only in colours, but  
also in properties and absolute perfecti-  
on. what greater wonder or miracle is  
there,

The trans-  
mutation of  
blood into  
sparme.

there, wherein we may knowledg and beholde the omnipotencie of God, then to consyder howe that of the meate and drynke whiche we dayly do eate, by digestiō first of the stomacke, the fine iuice therof is separated from the drosse and grosser part: & then after at the seconde hande, the foresayde iuice passyng thoro the guttes, attract and drawen into the lyuer thoro we infinite smal baynes, there transmutated into blood, from the lyuer sent into the great maister bayne, from the which the heart drawyng part, transmuteth certayne thereof into Artire blood. Agayne, the stones drawyng other part, maketh thereof & of the artire blood, whorled, circulate, and coagitate together, sparne: whiche sparne bestowed and conceaued where it shoulde be, becommeth mankynde.

Howe meate  
and drynke  
is transmu-  
ted into  
blood.

This foresaide seede, as we saide before, is nothing so firme, perfect, absolute and mightie in woman as in man, & yet can you not call this any imperfec-tiō or lack in womā: for the womā in her

The seede  
in woman,  
not so firme  
as in man,

kinde, and for the office & purpose wherefore she was made, is euen as absolute and perfect as man in his kynd, neyther is woman to be called (as some do) vnperfecter then man (for because that man is more myghtier and strong, the woman weaker & more feeble.) For by this reason, the horse, the Lion, the Dylphant, Camell, & many other beastes, should be called more perfect then man, to the whiche man is not able to compare in naturall myght and strength.

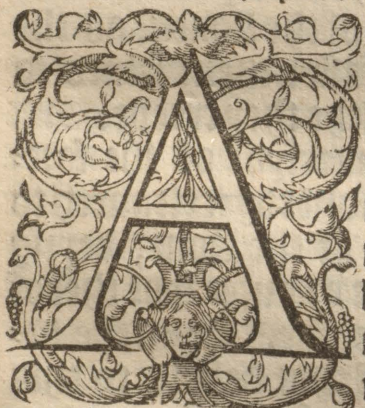
But truely, compar yng one man to another, suche as be gelded and want the genitozies, be much feebler, weake, & effeminate, the other: in voyce woman lyke, in gesture and condition nice, in softnes of skyn and plumpnes of the body fatter and rounder, in strength and force impotent, nothing manly ne bold, the whiche imbecilitie in them, maye wel be named imperfection. For imperfection is, whē that any perticuler creature doth lacke any propertie, instrument, or qualitie whiche commonly by nature

Who be vnperfecter the one then the other.

nature is in all other, or the more part of that kynde, comparvng it to other of the same kinde, & not of another kynde.

Thus we haue sufficiently talked of the seede bryngers & stones, with theyz offices. Nowe shall I declare what becommeth of the seede being thus engendred, and whyther it is conueyed.

**C** Of the way by the which the seede is sent from the stones to the angles and cozners of the Patrir. Cap. xi.



**A**t the lower end & foote or base of the braded body, wher it is infixed & planted into the head of the stone, on the backe syde halfe of the stone there is the begynnyng of

another vessel, which may be called the seede carver, in Latine Vas semen deferens, whose body is whyte and hardishe, like an harde sinewe. And from that part where it taketh his begynnyng, it passeth

*Of the seede carvers.*

seth

The first booke.

seth downewardes to the syde of the stone, hoopyng and compassyng along the syde therof (as ye may more expressely perceave in the figure hereof) tyll it come to the lower ende or base of the stone, from thence agayne resting or remountyng bywarde, creepyng along the other syde of the same stone, tyll it come and attayne in maner to the myddle region of the stone on that side, al the way as it creepeth, firmly fastned and affixed to the body of the stones, as the eye braunches do fasten them selues to the walles, by whiche they creepe.

The bellye and inner syde of the foresaide seede carier, wherby it cleaueth to the outsyde or face of the stone, beyng flattysh, the backe or outer syde therof roundyshe and smothe. From the begynnyng & head of this vessell, to this later ende in maner of equall corpulencie or bygnesse, but infinitely wreathed as an adder or yeele when thei slide fast or hastlye, make of theyr long bodyes many halfe hoopes, halfe circles, or wreathes



Wreathes nere ioyned together: howe-  
 be it, these Wreathes be not so frequent  
 and thicke in the Woman as in the man.  
 Therefore this part of the seede cary-  
 ers may be called the Worme, in Latin,  
 Corpus lumbricosū, for because that it hath  
 many conuolutions, as Wormes lying  
 together haue.

Of the part  
 called the  
 worme.

And yf ye be disposed to separate this  
 forenamed Worme from the face of the  
 stone With a sharpe knyfe, ye shall per-  
 ceauē no maner of holonesse or cauitie  
 of bayne or other cōduite: but as it were  
 a ruggednesse, by reason of separation  
 from the partie to Whom it was before  
 so surely annexed. And yet no doubt,  
 there is verily in it cauitie and hollow-  
 nesse, by and thoroowe the whiche seede  
 is caried into the angles of the Matrix.  
 Nowe then When this foresayde Wor-  
 mye body hath attayned to the myddle  
 region (as it were) of the stone, it begyn-  
 neth to depart from the bodye of the  
 stone, and is no more (as it was before)  
 thicke

thicke wreathed, but playne, smothe, & rounde lyke a rounde sinewe, With an vn sensible holonesse, departyng frō the stone along the insyde of the belly, ouerthwarting the guttes, to the angle or corner of the Matrix, on the ryght syde thereof (yf it proccede from the ryght stone) and on the left syde (if it come frō the left stone) and that not strayght or forthryght, but somewhat bowyng & crookyng it selfe in two or thre crookes by the way. These seede caryers receaue the seede conficted, concocted, and digested in the stones and foresayd seede byngers, conueying and directyng the same from the stones to the insyde of the corners of the Matrix, so that they whiche do open dead women, shall alwayes perceaue in the holownes of the Matrix, these two angles or corners specially bedeawed or imbued with a whyte slymye and thynne cleare matter, whiche no doubt is the womans seede. And in women hauyng greate  
and

& feruent desire to any man, this seede  
 doth issue from this foresayde place,  
 downe along to the womans priuie pas-  
 sage, moistring all that part, as it were  
 with a dewe. Aristotle and other mo,  
 do suppose that this seede in woman,  
 serueth for no other purpose, but onlye  
 to recite, moue, and stirre the woman  
 to pleasure. But some peradventure  
 would thinke that this were but a sim-  
 ple & anydle or slender purpose, whiche  
 if they did more nerely consider the mat-  
 ter, should perceauie it to be a iust, great,  
 and necessary cause. For if that the god  
 of nature had not instinced, and inset  
 in the body of man and woman, such a  
 vehement and ardent appetite and lust,  
 the one lawfully to companie with the  
 other, neyther man ne woman woulde  
 neuer haue ben so attentife to the wor-  
 kes of generation and encrease of  
 posteritie, to the vtter decaye in shor-  
 tyme of al mankynde. For ye shal heare  
 some women in tyme of theyr trauayle,  
 moued through great payne and intol-  
 lerable

The piches  
 of nature.

terable anguifhe, forſweare and bolwe  
them ſelfe, neuer to companye With a  
man agayne, yet after that the panges  
be paſſed, Within ſhort Whyle, for entyre  
loue to theyꝝ huſbandes, and ſingular  
naturall delyte betweene man and wo-  
man, they forget both the ſozow paſſed,  
and that that is to come. Suche be the  
priuie workes of God, and ſuche be the  
prickeſ of nature, Which neuer createth  
no ſpeciall pleaſure vnaccompanied  
With ſome ſozowe, neyther is there for  
the moſte part any ſozowe, but that it  
hath annexed ſome ioy or comfort, leſſe  
or moze, to alleuiate and lyghten the  
burthen and weyght of diſpleaſure.

So ioy with  
out ſome ſo-  
rowe.

¶ Here is declared the ſituation of the  
bladder in women.

Cap. xii.

**N**Owe for the vicinite and  
neighbourhood that is be-  
tweene the priuie paſſage  
and the bladder, here I  
will declare a litle the na-  
ture of the bladder.

The

The bladder in woman is assituate and set vppon the forepart of the Votter, whose necke is annered, fastened, & vnite within the priuie passage, vppon the forepart therof, as ye may see in the figure hereof, so that it is very harde to separate the one from the other. This necke of the bladder in women is much shorter then in men, the which necke is enuironed and compassed with a Muskle, called the bladder Muskle, as it were with a brode and flat hoope ryng, firming and clasping the brine passage in such wise, that no brine can issue out of the bladder, tyll such tyme that this Muskle do open it selfe, & licence it thereto: which thing cometh to passe, either when the bladder is ouercharged with brine, or els that the brine, although that it be but lytle in quantitie, yet haue some Colericke qualitie with it, whiche for the sharpenesse and eagernesse of the qualitie pryckyng and tycklyng the Muskle, causeth it to open it selfe many tymes for lytle quantitie. &c.

The Mus-  
cle of the  
bladder.

Howe the  
bladder  
Muskle is  
forced to  
open it selfe

The

The descrip  
tion of the  
bladder.

The body of the bladder is rounde, into the which a lytle aboue the necke thereof, entreth the seconde brine conduites, deriued from eche kidney one.

And here ye must first vnderstande, that on eche syde of the great master bayne, and lyke wyse of the Artyze, is situate a kidney, in Latin called Ren. And to euery of them from the sayde great bayne and great Artyze, is there deriued a braunche of the bayne, and another of the Artyze, by the which braunches the kydneys do attract and drawe blood vnto them, the which so drawn, they do (by theyr natie office) separate and diuide from the watery part, sending forth the water, other wyse called brine, downe to the bladder, through the brine baynes, or conduites.

Of the stone  
engendred  
in the backe

In these kidneys is there many times in a great number of people, engendred the grauell or stone, which is called the stone in the backe, the which when it is broken, eyther of it selfe, or els by vertue of medicines, the grauell, rubbell, or peeces

peeces therof, descende from the raynes  
 or kidnees into the bladder, by the fore-  
 named vyne conduites, and so from the  
 bladder out at the yarde, Where, yf the  
 peeces be rockie or bigge, it causeth to  
 the partie in the voydyng of them, vn-  
 tollerable paynes and torment. And  
 note that for the mooste part, the ryght  
 kydney euermore standeth hyer then  
 the lefte.

Nowe agayne ye shall vnderstande  
 that when the vyne, pisse, or water is  
 once entred through the foresayde vyne  
 conduites, into the bladder, it can not  
 returne bywarde agayne the way that  
 it came (were the bladder neuer so full)  
 for be cause that where as the said vyne  
 conduites do enter into the bladder, in  
 the inner face of y<sup>e</sup> bladder, there be set  
 before the mouth or gull of the condui-  
 tes, certayne litle skinnie flappes, which  
 suffer any thing to enter in, but when  
 it is once entred, these skinnie flappes  
 close the passage, and defende, that no  
 thyng can rebounde, ne reflue backe a-  
 gayne,

The vyne  
 once entred  
 into y<sup>e</sup> blad-  
 der, can not  
 reuert.

gayne, euen as it is in a payre of bellowes, which haue euer a great hole on the one syde thereof, to let into the bellowes great store of Wynde or ayre at once, but when the bellowes is full of Wynde, yf ye stop the nose thereof with somewhat, there wyll none thereof retorne agayne out by that waye, the flappes of leather crossing and defendyng the passage: yea, the more vehemently and the harder that ye presse both sydes of the bellowes together, the faster and more stifly doth the flaps stop the waye, and cleaue to the bordes of the bellowes, the violence and force of the Wynde closing and stopping his owne way, so that the bellowes would sooner breake, then that the ayre should come out there. And euen so it is in the bladder, sauing that the sayde skinnie flappes of the bladder, be more craftily, properly, and artificially wrought, then any man can deuise.

When there is then anye notable quantitie or qualitie of the vryne, gathered



thered together in the bladder, the bladder Muskle naturally doth open it selfe, and letteth it forth, passyng thoroowe the priuie passage on the forepart thereof.

In this bladder also as in the raynes, is there in manye people engendred the stone, Whereof commonly ensueth the strangury, dissury, With other diseases. The stone engendred in this place, yf it be of any notable quantitie, is verye harde or rather vnpossible to be dissolved, or cured without insition and cutting out. But Women be not so prone ne apt to engender the stone in the bladder as men be, because the necke of their bladder is shorter and larger, howbeit notwithstanding, dyuers of them be herewith greuously encombred.

The stone  
engendred  
in the bladder.

**C** Of the baynes which resort to the matrix and the partes thereof.

Item of the termes & their course with the causes thereof. Cap. xiii.

Fij

In

**A**lasmuch as the absolute vnderstandyng of the nature of the termes in Women, can not Wel be perceiued, except first it be knowē what vaines, how many, from whence, & after what sort they do attayne to the matrix: therfore first I will entreate of them, & then cōsequently of the termes.

Three notable vaines resorting to the matrix.

Waynes then notable, which may be perceaued by Anothomie to reach from severall partes of the great Vena caua, or maister bayne, to the matrix and the partes therof, be three, to whom for the more cleare, distinct, and euidēt doctrine sake, I wil geue three distinct and diuers names. The first shalbe named the bottome vaines of the matrix. The second, the necke baynes of the matrix. The thyrde, the share baynes.

The bottome vaines of the matrix.

The bottome baynes be they, which proceade and take their begynnyng at the seede bringer baynes, from whence they attayne to the bottome or founde of the matrix, there dilating themselves

selfe brode in manyfolde small flippes,  
noythyng the bodye of the matrix, as  
hath ben sayde alredye in the ende of  
the .ix. Chapter.

As touchyng the necke baynes of the  
matrix, ye shall vnderstande that in the The necke  
baynes.  
foresaid .ix. chapter, I shewed you how  
that the great maister bayne, and the  
great artire associate together, when  
they attayne about <sup>O s</sup> sacrum, they begin  
to diuide them selues in two partes  
forkwyle, of the whiche the ryght (& so  
likewyle the left) part of the forke is re-  
diuided in other two partes forkwyle  
also, wherof the vppermoste and grea-  
test bayne passeth downe along tyll it  
come to the hockle bone, ouer whom it  
proceedeth into the vtter parte of the  
thygh, & so along downe to the legges  
and feete. The innermost and leste or  
smaller part or bayne of this seconde di-  
uision, where it parteth from the vpper-  
moste, passeth downe along vntyll  
it come to the great hole whiche is al-  
wayes in þ share bone, through whiche

it entereth into the inner parte of the thygh or flanke. But by the way, or it attayne the sayd hole of the sharebone, it sendeth forth diuers slippes and smal bzaunches in the necke of the matrix, and the nether parte of the body of the matrix, and also to the bladder, as ye may more clerely see in y<sup>e</sup> figure hereof.

Of the neck  
baynes of  
the matrix.

The share  
baynes.

The share baynes take their begynnyng at the insyde of the aboue named vppermost and greatest bayne, euen at the place where it beginneth to passe ouer y<sup>e</sup> hockle bone, frō whence this slip is deriued on eche side, that is, both the ryght and the lefte, vnto the middle of the sharebone, where in men it sendeth forth bzaunches into the skinne that couereth the priuie parte and the coddles, & also the <sup>Perineum</sup>, whiche is the place that is betweene the fundament and the yard. In women this vaine where it attayneth the middle parte of the sharebone, it deriueeth and spreadeth it selfe into the lappes, sydes, or extreme ende of the priuie passage, and also in  
the

the sayde perineum. And this shall suffice for the declaration of the baynes. Whiche resort to the matrix and her partes, saue that ye muste vnderstande, that loke what order or procession of baynes commeth to the matrix from the ryght syde, the same selfe order is lyke wyse in the lefte syde: and agayne, that none of these baynes runne to the matrix or otherwhere, vnassociate of an artire.

Nowe to come to the declaration of the nature of termes: ye shal vnderstand that they be called in Latin *Menstrua*, so, because that once in a moneth they happen alwayes to womankind after .xiiiij. or .xv. yeres of age passed (beyng in their perfect health) In Englishe they be named *Termes*, because they retourne eftsones at certayne seasons, tymes, and termes, and some name them their flowers. What name soeuer ye geue vnto it, ye shall wite, that the thyng meant thereby, is nothyng els but the issuing of certayne blood,

What is meant by this worde *Termes*.

comprehended in the baynes of the matrix, there by litle and litle collected and gathered betweene terme & terme, and so agayne at wont and accustomed tymes, by nature expelled and sente forth.

The which blood, the matrix baines do attract from the great <sup>vena caua</sup>, into this part, and that not sodaynely or at once, but very soberly, and with much leasure, yea, so much as there is space betweene the one hauing of the flowres & the other (whiche is commonly three wekes, more or lesse, accordyng to the womans wont) so long be these sayde baynes in filling, and yf they were sooner full, sooner also woulde they sende it forth agayne. For when they be once replenished, they can not conueniently or naturally contayne or drawe any more, tyl they be lyghtened and discharged of that that is drawen already.

Wherfore at the foresayde certayne circuites and termes, the small endes of these matrix baynes open them selues

in the inner face or superfcie of the matrix, after an insensible & secrete priuie sort, and so let to passe forth this blood, which as I haue sayd, is called the womans termes.

The cause and reason Why nature created this perpetual course of termes in women, is this: Forasmuche as almyghtie God had so institute that woman should be conceaued, efformed, or fassioned, augmented, nourished, and brought to perfection. This coulde not be done vnlesse there were a commodious and conuenient place to this office assigned and destinate, whereof nature created the wombe or matrix to be the sayde receptacle, & house of office wherein she mought at her leasure worke her deuine feates about the seede once conceaued.

The cause of the ordinance of termes.

Agayne it is not inough the seede to be placed, vnlesse also it haue foode and nourishment, to the encrease and augmentation of the same, wherefore prudent Lady nature full wisely hath provided

uided, that there shoulde alwayes be  
 prest and redye a continuall course and  
 resort of blood in the vaines of the ma-  
 trix, as a very naturall course, spryng,  
 fountayne, or Wel, euermore redy to ar-  
 rouse, water, and nozise the feature, so  
 sone as it shalbe cōceined, yea although  
 the woman do neuer conceiue, other be-  
 cause she accompanieth not with man,  
 other els for some other infirmitie, yet  
 is there no fault in nature, who hath  
 prepared a place and foode to be at all  
 tymes in a redynesse.

Which foode, although it is ordeyned  
 for this necessary purpose, yet whē the  
 purpose fayleth (as it doth when there  
 is no feature in the wombe to be fedde  
 therewith) it should be to the place but  
 a burthen and vnprofitable loade, there  
 to remayne or lynger: wherfore then I  
 say, at her set and prescript tyme she la-  
 boureth to cleare her self of it, and to ex-  
 pell it as superfluous and seruing to no  
 vse. The which thing when she hath so  
 done, yet vnto the sayde baynes of this  
 con-



continuall spring, resorteth of newe a-  
 gayne other freshe blood in the place of  
 that that is departed, Whiche by litle  
 and litle coling into them, in the wont  
 circuite of time refilleth them, and then  
 yet issueth agayne, and so this continu-  
 al course doth kepe alwaies in Women,  
 from their youth, tyll they come to a  
 bout fiftie yerres of age, or litle more or  
 lesse, at what time naturally this spring  
 dryeth away, which when it is gone, it  
 is impossible for the woman to beare a-  
 ny mo children. For were the womā ne-  
 uer so yong & lusty, yet yf she neuer had  
 her termes (as some suche there be) she  
 shal neuer also haue no childrē, albeit it  
 may be that she may conceaue, but the  
 seede conceaued can not proue, but mel-  
 teth & issueth forth agayne for lacke of  
 nutriment. Itē ye shal note, that where  
 as some write & saye that the Womens  
 termes folowe the course of the moone,  
 so that in the full or in the wane of the  
 moone they shuld alwaies come: this is  
 not true, for they haue them at one time  
 and

They that  
 haue no ter-  
 mes can not  
 beare chyl-  
 dren.

Termes  
come not to  
all women  
lyke.

and other in all seasons of the moone. Againe, as they come not to all women after one sort, or at one season, so is the tyme of their duraunce not all one in euerye woman, for in some they lynger vpon them .v. .vi. .vii. yea .viii. dayes at ech terme, to their great effeobliment & strong paines in the backe. In some other commonly they passe not the space of thre dayes at the vttermost, wherefore such sustayne litle or no paynes at that tyme.

To be short, all women (for the most part) which be of very delicate & moyst complexions (as the sanguyne cheefely be) haue greatest abundance of termes, and longer tyme doth it endure vpon them. And contrary, such as be dry and collerike, other by nature, or labour and trauaile, & suche that be of complexion cold, haue least stoz of termes, and lesse tyme do they endure vpon them. After what maner the feature conceaued is fedde and nourysched with this bloode (matter at other times of y termes) I  
Wyll

Wyll declare, When that I haue some-  
 what firste shewed the nature of cer-  
 tayne caules, wherein the feature con-  
 ceaued is Wrapped and inuolued.

Of the three caules or Wrappers wher-  
 in the infant is lapped. Capit. xiiii.



The seede concea-  
 ued into y<sup>e</sup> wombe  
 or matrix of the  
 mother, anon it is  
 amplexed, clip-  
 ped, & embraced of  
 the inner face of y<sup>e</sup>  
 matrix, y<sup>e</sup> mouth  
 or port thereof in

The feature  
 conceaued is  
 wrapped in  
 three caules.

the meane while closed & shut exquisite-  
 lye. The seede then when it hath ben a  
 certayne litle space in the wombe, by  
 the naturall heate, or rather by the in-  
 set and ingenite vertue of that place, is  
 environed & enclosed rounde with three  
 diuers coates, caules, or, Wrappers,  
 which in Latin they call (Inuolucra.)

The first and moste immediate or  
 nearest

The first  
caule

nearest to the body of the conception, is a very thinne and cleare caule or skinne, whiche containeth rounde about the whole feature, and yet is fastened to no part of the feature, but onely at the navel, by certayne baynes and artires, whereof we wyll speake anone, this caule in Greke is called *Amnios*, in Latin *Agnia*, for cause it is as delicate as lambes be. The Midwifes commonly call it the coyfe or biggen of the chylde, and some call it the chyldes shert, the which also manye tymes proceedeth alone with the childe, eyther vpon the childes head, or one of y<sup>e</sup> armes or legges. And then the Women reserue it as a thyng that shoulde betoken some great lucke to the chylde in tyme to come, for they beleue that euery chylde hath not suche a coyfe, because it doth appeare but seldome alone, vnaccompanied with the other caules. Betwene this Wrapper or coyfe, and the body of the infant, is collected and gathered the yelowish sweate which euapozeth continually from the

skyn

skinne of the infant, whylest it is in the wombe.

The second Wrapper oz caule in Greke is called Allantoides, in latin Farciminosa, in The second wrapper.

Englishe, these two termes do signifie (haggiswyse) for because that it is fashioned much after the shape of the outward skinne oz bagge of an haggisse pudding. The inner face and superficie of this caule is smoth and moyste, fastened to no part of the first Wrapper, but onlye at the nauell of the chylde, and contayneth also rounde about in his compasse and cavitie oz holownes, the whole childe, and the saide first caule.

Betweene this and the first caule, is gathered together all the store of vryne that the chylde maketh, during the time it is in the mothers wombe, where in the industry of nature is to be lauded, which so prouideth, that this pisse oz vryne of the infant should be expelled betwene these two caules, and not remaine about the body therof, lest with the acrimonye and eager sharpenesse hereof,

hereof, it should endamage and greene the tender body of the baby.

The thirde  
wrapper na-  
med Chorion

The thirde Wrapper of the feature is named Chorion of the Grekes, in Latin, secunde or secundina, in English ye may call it the secundine: Albeit that in the second booke folowng, I do commonlye vse to name y<sup>e</sup> whole afterbyrth, the secundine. And no doubt but that the auncientes which gaue the name of (secunde or secundina) to this wrapper, gaue the name of the whole to the part, for this terme (secunde) or (secundina) is proper & most due to the afterbyrth, the which afterbyrth, is nothing els but an issuing forth, and proceeding of these three wrappers or caules, together with such grosse excrementes as haue ben engendred and remayning in the wombe, during the tyme of conception, and that immediatly after the chyld is first proceeded & come to lyght, for first issueth the infante, and then secondlye, the foresaid afterbirth, & therfore it may be iustlye called the second birth or secundine.

This

This Wrapper or caule then, doth not vniuersally, and in euery part compasse and couer the infant as the other two Wrappers do, but onely the myddle region, as it were from the vpper part of the waste, to the share of the infant, so that it is compassed with this Wrapper as with a broade hoope ryng, the latitude or breadth whereof, is commonly to be esteemed about the breadth of. vi. or. viii. fingers, and so girdeth the childe round about the body therof, as it were a broade gyrt or swadlyng bande, but yet ye must not vnderstand that it shuld touche immediatlye the body of the infant, for betweene this and the bodye thereof (as I haue declared before) be the foresaid two other caules or Wrappers, which generally incloseth rounde the whole corpes of the infant, wher as this hoope caule compasseth and conereth but the middle region therof only.

The office and propertie of this Wrapper is suche: Fyrst the vtter face of it cleaueth and is affixed or basted verve

The office  
of the hoope  
caule.

exactly to the inner face and Walles of the Matrix, by meanes of vnumerable small baynes and artyres, Which at this tyme do shewe them selues more clearly in the face of the Matrix, then at any other time, the Which also cleaue vnto this hoope caule in euery parte thereof, touchyng the same Matrix, so that the saide hoope caule and the inner syde of the Matrix be basted very thicke together, by the immediate meanes of the sayde baynes and braunches, euen much lyke as the body of the Fly tree basteth and fasteneth it selfe vnto the Walles or trees, Whereby it creepeth by many heartie fibres or small threedes.

This coniunction betweene the Matrix and the hoope caule, reacheth vniuersally so farre and so broad, as the latitude and longitude of the hoope caule doth extende it selfe rounde about in the Matrix. And these foresayd baynes and artires do not only knyt and vnite these two together, but also entrech into the substance of the hoope caule at euery part



part thereof. And within the sayd sub-  
 stance of the hoope caule, these many-  
 fold smal braunches meete, & enter mir-  
 gle the one with the other, the baynes  
 with the baynes, and the Artires with  
 the Artires, so that in theyꝝ recoultre  
 and meetyng, they produce allwayes  
 bigger and bigger baynes and Artires,  
 (but fewer) tyll as the last all these be-  
 come two great baynes, and two great  
 artires, the whiche foure vessels from  
 hence proceede together, passe & pearse  
 through the other two caules spoken of  
 before, and so entretly into the Nauil of  
 the child, so that the three caules by the  
 meanes hereof be attached, nayled, and  
 fastened to the childes nauil, and when  
 they be entred into the Nauil, the two  
 baynes degenerate in one, the whiche  
 fro this place mounteth vpyward along  
 the inner superficie of the belly, vntyll it  
 haue attayned into the liuer, wher it en-  
 tering, diuideth it self againe into many  
 slippes, so that no doubt the blood is ca-  
 ried through this nauil bayne, from the  
 baynes

baynes of the mothers Matrix into the liuer of the chylde, from whence againe it is attracted into al partes nozysable of the Infant.

Agayne, the two Artyzes passe from the Nauell downe warde, the one along the ryght syde of the chylde's bladder, the other along the left, tyll it attayne to the thare Artires, whereof we spake before. Through these Artyzes, lyuely spirite and freshe ayre is deriued out of the mother, into the chylde, wherewith the naturall heate of the chylde is viui-fied and refreshed.

And these two Artires with the foresayde nauyll vaine, when the chylde is borne, begin to wyther and drye, euerye day more and more, & become much like a Harpe string, without any holownesse or cauitie. Yet ye shall note that there is another vessell, which taketh his originall at the bottome, founde, or vpper part of the chylde's bladder, and extendeth it selfe to the nauyll of the Infant, through which it passeth vntyll it come betweene

betweene the fyrst and the seconde caule  
 without the chyldes bydy, Where, by a  
 priuie issue deuised by nature for the  
 same purpose, is expelled the brine of  
 the Infant, proceeding by this brine  
 bayne from the bladder, as partly was  
 spoken of before, that part of this brine  
 bayne which is within the body, when  
 the chyld is borne dryeth and withereth  
 away, as I sayde of the other.

which way  
 the chyld  
 doth expell  
 the brine.

The inner superfacie or face of this  
 Chorion is very strongly affixed and fast-  
 ned to the vtter superfacie of the seconde  
 caule named Allantoides.

As for the bastynge that is betweene  
 the Matrix and Chorion, many tymes it  
 is weakened and esseoblised by reason  
 of euyll, flegmaticke, or colericke hu-  
 mours therabout, betweene the bastin-  
 ges conceaued, whiche ouermuche ha-  
 bouiding, do cloy the said bastynge  
 baynes or strynges, whereby manye tymes the  
 one seuereth from the other before con-  
 uenient season, & so causeth aborcement.  
 The mouthes or specks of the baynes in

## The first Booke.

the matrix, wherby it cleaueth to Choriō,  
be called in latin Acetabula & Cotiledones, for  
what cause, or vpon what reaso, is both  
nedelesse and vnprofitable here to be re-  
hearsed. Agayne, the substance of this  
Chorion is not thinne like a skin, bladder,  
or caule: but of al other partes of the bo-  
dy, it may be most worthily resembled  
to the spleane or melt in a man or beast,  
the copulencie or thicknes whereof, is  
as much or more as the thicknes of the  
thumbe, the colour swartishe black. Of  
which colour also the blood therein con-  
teyned, is as the remayne and refuse of  
the purer, attract and drawen natural-  
lye of the Infant, by the abouenamed  
navil bayne. So that, to be short, Chorion  
is the immediat receptacle and receauer  
of al the baynes and artires, to be dedu-  
ced from the Matrix to the chylde, and  
the chylde receaueth only at his hande  
the two baynes and Artires, whiche  
by the way as they passe & pearse thro-  
row the other two calles, to wardes the  
chylde's Nauill, they sende into eche of  
the

The sub-  
stance of  
Chorion.

the caules innumerable small eye baynes and artyzes, whereby the caules be susteyned, and encreased also.

The Termes then which were wont at other times to sturre theselues in the Matrix baynes, and at certayne circuites to issue forth: Nowe when there is a feature or chyld in the same Matrix conceaued, they proceede no more forth (as superfluous) but remayne and be reserved to the necessarie nutriment of the feature, and some part therof reflueth & is reuerted to the Womens brestes, there to become mylke, as shalbe sayde in the next Chapter. And nowe hath nature her purpose wherfore she made and created this course of blood, as hath ben written sufficiently in the Chap. before.

But here ye shall note, that they be greatly deceaued and abused, which call the Termes the womans purgation, or the cleansyng of theyr blood: as who should say that it were the refuse, dross, and byler part of the other blood remaynyng in the body, naturallye every

G iij      moneth

The termes  
be of so hol-  
some blood,  
as any other  
part in the  
body.

moneth sequestrate and separated from  
the purer, for the vilitie and euill quali-  
tie therein comprehended. For vndoub-  
tedly this blood is euen as pure and hol-  
some as all the rest of the blood in anye  
part of the body els.

The chyld  
being in the  
wombe, no-  
ryshed of the  
purest blood

Is it to be thought, that nature would  
feede the tender & delicate Infant in the  
mothers wombe, with the refuse of the  
blood, or not rather with the purest of  
it: Yes, and therfore forbecause that she  
woulde that the pure blood commyng  
frō the Matrix baynes shoulde be made  
yet purer, she suffereth not the same to  
enter immediatly into the Infant, but  
first vseth another meane, and sendeth it  
into Chorion or the hoope cal (as I haue  
sayd before) Where truely it hath a cer-  
tayne circulation and another digesti-  
on, wherby it is defecate, and clenled ve-  
ry exquisitly, by the diligencie of nature  
attenuated and fined, and so at the laste  
sent forth into the Infant, leauyng all  
the grosser part in the spongy bodye of  
the hoope caule.

Yet much more are to be detested and  
abhorred the shamefull lyes and flaunder  
that <sup>Plinie, Albertus magnus de secretis mu-</sup>  
lierum, & diuers other mo haue Wrytten, <sup>Slaunders</sup>  
of the venemous and daungerous infec- <sup>of the Ter-</sup>  
tiue nature of the womans flowres or <sup>mes.</sup>  
termes, the whiche all be but dreames  
and playne dotage. To rehearse theyz  
fond wordes here, were but losse of inke  
& paper, wherefoze let them passe with  
theyz aucthors.

Which of the thre Matrix baynes conteyne the  
Termes, and howe the Pluke commeth  
to the womans byestes.

Cap. xv.



**I** Shewed you here  
before, that to thre  
different partes &  
regiōs of the Ma-  
trix, there resorted  
from thre different  
partes of vena caua,  
thre sundrie bayne  
slips. Nowe whi-  
che of these slippes shoulde byng the  
blood

blood called the Termes into the Ma-  
 trix, or from which of them the termes  
 shoulde proceede, it is harde clearly to  
 discusse, but onely by lykely coniectures.  
 And yet it is a thynge very necessarype to  
 be knowen, for the redyer aduertise-  
 ment howe medicines for that purpose  
 shoulde be applyed in that place, when  
 neede shoulde be, eyther to prouoke the  
 Termes by some casualtie stopped, or  
 els contrary to restrayne them immo-  
 derately flowyng. For yf the bottome  
 baynes of the Matrix do contayne only  
 the Termes, then shoulde any medicine  
 conueyed vnderneath profite nothyng,  
 except it be conueyed so farre by, that it  
 maye attayne within the holownesse  
 of the Matrix, the whiche is verye  
 lytle when the woman is not with  
 chylde.

Agayne, yf the necke baynes of the  
 Matrix do only conteyne these termes,  
 then needed medicines to be applyed no  
 farther then to that place. As for the  
 thirde Matrix baynes, there is none  
 that



that doth once suspecte the **Termes** to  
proceede from them: But manye there  
be, which do suppose the termes to issue  
both at the necke vaines, and at the bot-  
tome baynes also, but most notably at  
the necke baynes, for because (say they)  
that these baynes do appeare more con-  
spicuous and notable to the eyes when  
a woman is cut open, then do the bot-  
tome baynes, which may be very skant-  
ly perceaued, wherfore they thinke that  
these necke baynes shoulde be the grea-  
ter stirrer of **Termes**.

Agayne (say they) we see many tymes  
that after the woman is conceaued, yet  
doth there issue termes tyll the thirde or  
fourth, yea sometymes the fyfth mo-  
neth, the which nowe at this tyme can  
not proceede out of the **Matrix**: for the  
pore or mouth therof, accordyng to au-  
thours opinions, is so closed after the  
seede conceaued, that the poynt of a nee-  
dle can not enter but by violence and  
force. wherfore they conclude, that the  
**Termes** at this tyme muste needes  
spring

The first Booke.

spring out of the necke vayne, and not out of the bottome vaines.

To those I answered, that both at this tyme and at all other tymes, the Termes issue onely out of the bottome vaines, & out of such of the necke vaines as spreade them selfe onely within the Matrix, as may be seene in the figure. For insomuche as nature dyd create the course of Termes for no other cause, but onely to be a preast and redye foode at all tymes to the feature conceaued, to what purpose shoulde the Termes in the necke vaines of the Matrix serue, where there can neuer be any conception, neither the seede there can remayne: And as concerning the issuing of the Termes after conception, I say that the port of the Matrix is neuer so exactly close, but that such a liquid thing as blood is, may thryll and coole out of it, yea although (as they say) the poynt of a needle cannot enter in thereat. For ye may see, that betweene the chynes and chynkes of closelye ioyned boordes, the

the poynt of a needle will not easily enter, yet water or any other liquid thing, may passe through without lette, and even so is it in the Matrix.

And yet for all this, it shal not folowe that the seede shoulde passe out thereat, aswell as the blood, for the seede is of a more fast compacte, and stedfaste substance. And besydes this, by that tyme that the seede hath ben but a daye or two in the Matrix, it waxeth yet more stable and stedfast, by the naturall heate of the place, yea, and is compassed with a thinne ryme, as a tender egge is vnder the shell, wherefore it wyll not so soone issue out of the Matrix without great iniurie.

Here agayne ye shall note the cause why that Physicians do counsell women which be desirous to conceaue, and can not for lubricitie, moystnes, or waterynes of the Matrix (wherby the attractife and attentife power of the Matrix is debilitat and weakened) to take fumes and vapours vnderneath, or other  
medic

medicines at the mouth to drye the sayd humidities, immediatly after the Termes be passed, and not bypon the commyng of them, for yf the woman should be conceaued bypon the commyng of the sayde Termes, then woulde they commixt them self with the seede, before the seede haue gotten yet any perfect ryme or caule, whereby the seede shoulde be come the thinner and be made fluy, and so to passe forth agayne out of the Matrix, washed out with the Termes.

But immediatly after that the Termes be passed, if the seede be conceaued, then shall it haue sufficient tyme to get a strong ryme or caule ouer it, before the Termes come agayne. And agayne, whyles the little speckes or mouthes of the Matrix vaines be yet open, after the lettynge forth of the Termes, they shall be the more apt to cleaue and to ioyne the selues with the feature, by meanes of calues wherein the feature is inuolued, and cheefely of Chorion, named the hoope caule, as hath ben sufficientlye sayd

sayde here before.

Yet when the seede hath ben three or  
 foure weekes in the wombe, it is not of  
 sufficient quantitie to consume into his  
 nutriment all the blood that was wont  
 to resort into the Matrix baynes, wher-  
 fore the first, second, yea, & third moneth  
 sometimes at the womans wont tyme  
 of Termes, there issueth and sheweth  
 some blood more or lesse, the more in the  
 whiche were wont at other tymes to  
 haue aboundaunce of them. &c. And ye  
 shall note that when the child is concea-  
 ued, & that the caule <sup>Chorion</sup> is fastened &  
 basted to the matrix by the baynes ther-  
 of, yet do not all the baynes of the matrix  
 attaine to the said <sup>Chorion</sup>, but a certaine,  
 so far as <sup>Chorion</sup> doth reach, howbeit the  
 larger that <sup>Chorion</sup> groweth with y<sup>e</sup> child,  
 the mo baynes doth he couer, wherfore  
 fro those baynes that be not yet affixed  
 vnto <sup>Chorion</sup>, do the termes flowe at this  
 time: But whē the child beginneth once  
 to come to a greater perfectiō & growth,  
 then is all the Terme blood reserved  
 in

in the Matrix, as litle enough to satisfie the chyld, and then also part thereof mounteth by into the brestes, and becometh mylke, as shalbe sayde hereafter.

Yet agayne to confirme myne opinion, that the Termes do only issue out of the vaute of the Matrix: We shall vnderstande, that at sundry tymes I haue had two diuers Women in cure, the one in London, and the other in Paris: Of which, the one by a fall of her horse, the other by a violent thrust and squat on the buttockes vpon the harde stones in the streete, beyng both neare the time of theyr purgation, chaunced also both of them into one maner of disease (that is to say) immediatlye herevppon, theyr Termes dyd issue. And so continued dayly, to the one of them, the space of halfe a yere, & to the other a whole yere, so that after that time the Termes stayed agayne, and issued no more dayly as before, but once in foure wekes, at what time they boyded great lumpes, kakes, or cloddes of blood, congealed together  
even

even lyke the liuer of a beast. And in the meane time, betweene eche voydyng of these lumpes of blood, (Whiche as I haue sayde come to passe once in foure Weekes) euery day continually appeared and issued there whyte flowres (as they named it.)

Nowe to declare the particuler occasions of this maner of voydyng of the termes, ye shal vnderstand, that by the force of the fall and squat, the Matrix baynes brake, and that so muche the more promptly, that they were the fuller of blood, and that nearer their tyme of purgation, vppon whiche bracke, the blood dayly issued afterward, whereby the vigour & kind heate of the Matrix, by litle and litle decreased and decayed, frigiditie and coldnesse succeeded. By whiche occasion also the mouth or port of the Matrix, wered the more contract and narrower, for colde closeth, knitteth, & congeleth. Hereto helped also not a litle the great vse of colde byndyng medicines, whiche eche of them dyd apply to  
Hj this

this place at the simple counsaile of ignorant persons.

The port then of the Matrix by this occasion closed & contracted, the blood went alwayes dayly to procede, remayneth within the Matrix, where as fast as it droppeth and cooleth out of the baynes, it congeleth and cluddereth together, lyke as ye may see, that when a man is let blood in a basin or other vessel, and that the blood stande still in it the space of .v. or .vi. houres, it wylbe concret and congiled in a cludder lyke a lyuer, the watery part thereof swimming and flitting aboue bypon the face of it: and euen so is it of the blood congiled in the Matrix, so that when there is so muche of this congiled blood concealed together in the said matrix, that it can not contayne it any lenger, then violently and perforce it issueth out together, with farre greater peril, danger, and dolour to the woman, then though she laboured with a childe.

The whyte flowres that issued, during



ring the tyme that this blood gathered in the matrix, was (no doubt) the very Waterishe part that flected when the blood congeiled, for that water can neuer congeile as the blood doth, wherfore euerye day as fast as the blood dyd congeyle in the matrix, so faste also dyd the water seperate it selfe from the blood, and so issued.

Notwithstanding I am not ignozaunt that the very Whyte flowres in dede do procede from the seede carriars, into the angles or corners of the matrix, and so frō thence outwarde, the which disease also men haue manye tymes. And it commeth eyther of the aboundaunce of fleugme in the body, or of the corruptiō and euyll qualitie mixed in the seede. &c.

These examples as I suppose may be sufficient evidences, that the Termes spring alwayes frō within the matrix, & not from any part of the necke therof. Item I haue sene diuers other womē, in whom their termes haue staid the space of .vi. viii. & x. wekes, wherewith

H ij

their

their bellies haue encreased and waxed bigger, so that they haue thought themselves to be with chylde: Notwithstandyng, at the last haue boyded suche lyke lumps of blood, as I haue spoken of here before, not without greate peryll and daunger to them in the boydyng, wherewithall their bellies haue relaxed and decreased agayne. And thus I make an ende, to talke anye moze of the nature and course of the Termes: and now wyll I declare somewhat of y<sup>e</sup> conueyaunce & course of the milke into the womans brestes: for there is great affinitye, communitie, and familiaritie betweene the Matrix & the brestes, whiche naturally do perceaue and feele anon when the matrix hath conceiued, and then begyn they to bzeue & to make ready their part, agaynst the tyme that the Matrix hath aldone her part, that is, agaynst the chylde be borne. The mylke whiche commeth to the brestes, is engendred of the Termes (according to the most mens opinions.)

But

But to knowe whiche way the sayde  
 Terme shoulde attayne from the ma-  
 trix to the breastes, ye shall vnderstand,  
 that the vppermost and greatest bayne  
 of the seconde diuision, spoken of in the  
 xiii. chap. Where it attaineth the hockle  
 bone, redye to passe out of the holonesse  
 of the belly into the thigh, befoze that it  
 perse the kell called *peritonium*, it sendeth  
 forth a notable vaine braunche, which  
 from hence mounteth vpwarde along  
 the belly betwene the right muskle and  
 the ouerthwart, til it come a litle aboue  
 the nauell, where the extreme or vpper  
 ende thereof diuideth it selke in many-  
 folde litle braunches, meetyng and en-  
 termingling them selues with the ex-  
 treme litle braunches or flippes of ano-  
 ther lyke bayne, descending from the  
 vppermost chestbone, downe along the  
 insyde of the chest, and the insyde of the  
 vpper part of the belly, vntyll it meete  
 with the foresayde mounting bayne, a  
 litle aboue the nauell.

And ye shall note, that this bayne  
 H iij braunche

braunche proceeding from vena caua, at the highest chestbone downward along the inner side of the chest or brest, by the way as it passeth, it yeldeth certayne litle slippes and small braunches of it self, betwene the ribbes into the brestes. wherefore the consent of all auctours is, that by the meanes of these descending bayne braunches at both sides of the bodye, & the other ascending bayne braunches on both sides of the bellye, there shoulde be great communitie and fellowship betweene the brestes in women, and the Matrix or the wombe.

For doubtlesse by common experience, ye may see that when the time of conception in women is, & that by this meanes the termes be stopped, then as the termes do deminish & waxe lesse, so doth the mylke in the brestes encrease and waxe euery day more & more, as who might say that the superfluitie of blood wonte at other tymes to boyde in the name of Termes, now at this tyme by the prouidence and prouisiō of nature, is  
 retained

retayned as no superfluitie, but rather a necessary humour, reuerted and destinate another waye, that is to saye, sent from the baynes of the Matrix parte thereof bpwarde by the forenamed ascending bayne branches, at their handes agayne receiued and naturally attracted by the other descending brest baynes, through whom it is carped into the brestes, where by newe naturall circulations it is digested into Whyte milke, being before red blood, redy now prepared to nozyshe the chylde when nature shall sende it into the worlde.

Agayne, so long as the woman geueth sucke to the chylde, & hath store of mylke in her brestes, her termes be of very litle or no quantitie. These be euidences that there should be great familiaritie betweene the Matrix and the brestes, forsomuch as the ebbing of the one, is the flowyng of the other: wherefore Phisitians sometimes, when the flowres issue more vehemently then needeth, they set boryng glasses vnder the

brestes, meanyng thereby to reuert and  
 returne bywarde, the matter enclined  
 to much downewarde, the which prac-  
 tise how much it preuayleth, I Wyl not  
 here dispute. Yet in this matter to dis-  
 cusse the very veritie as neare as reason  
 and the knowledge of Anothomie will  
 geue leaue, ye shall not vnderstande my  
 sayinges that I should meane that al-  
 wayes when the termes stop beneath  
 by anye colde, thought, or other occasi-  
 ons, by and by the same blood to stye  
 and mount by into the brestes, & there  
 to become milke: for the contrary here-  
 of is dayly seene. For most commonlye  
 they in whom these termes do stop, for  
 any other cause then conception, the su-  
 perfluous blood retayned in the bodye,  
 and in the baynes wandring, causeth  
 to the partie great headache, taketh a-  
 waye their stomacke, and engendreth  
 diuers other inconueniences, neither in  
 the meane whyle is there any thing the  
 more mylke in the brestes.

Wherefoze ye may wel saye, that the  
 cause

cause of plentie of mylke in y<sup>e</sup> Womans  
brestes in time of her being With childe,  
and much more afterwarde, commeth  
chiefly by a priue naturall instinction,  
Whereby it is geuen vnto the brestes at  
that time more then at anye other, to  
draw vnto it selfe greater abundaunce  
of blood, conuerting and altering the  
same by the proprietie of the place, into  
conuenient mylke.

It is not a sufficient cause to replenishe  
the brest the Termes to be by any occa-  
sion stopped beneath, but there must al-  
so concurre the attractiue power, inset  
in the brestes to drawe the sayde blood  
(matter at other times of the Termes)  
Without which attraction, be the Ter-  
mes neuer so long stopped, yet shall the  
brestes be nothing the fuller, if it chaunce  
that this attractiue power halte o<sup>r</sup> be  
not able to attract sufficient matter to  
make mylke vpon fo<sup>r</sup> the Infant, then  
Phisitios are wont to helpe the debilitie  
of nature, With cupping glasses set vpon  
o<sup>r</sup> vnder the brestes, o<sup>r</sup> els With gentle

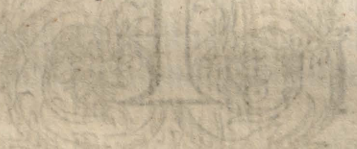
the attractiue emplasters applied to the same places.

And although that into the brestes do resorte greate store of other baynes, some descending from the vaines of the shoulders, & other some from y<sup>e</sup> vaines passing by the armeholes into the armes and handes, the which in moyson and notable bignesse, muche surmount the quantitie of the aboue named descending brest baynes, as it maye appeare evidently in many Women which haue these baynes appearing in the superficie of their brestes immediatly vnder the skin, very conspicuous and sightful: yet notwithstanding it is thought by strong coniectures, that the mylke in the brestes should be engendred only vpon the blood mounting from the aforesayde ascendyng Matrix baynes, and not vpon the blood conteyned in the other baynes, howe conspicuous so euer they be, so that the blood in them comprehended, serueth onely to the nourishment of the substance of the brestes



bestes them selues, & not to the main-  
tenaunce of the mylke.

To declare here curiously the maner  
that nature vseth in circulatynge of the  
attracted blood, wherby alterations is  
made from one colour to another, wold  
require a longer processe, the which for  
brevitie we will omit at this time, with  
many other problemes, doubttes, and  
difficulties concernynge the same. And  
so we make an ende of this first booke.



## The first booke.

**C** The declaration by letters, of the figures following, wherein be set forth to the eye, every part in woman, mentioned in this booke before: Which in the former printings hath ben corrupted, but nowe truely set forth.

**C** The first figure of the partes of women, with the declaration and characters of the same.



**I**n this first figure is set forth the tronke or stocke of a womans body, laid on y<sup>e</sup> ground, whose peritonium is opened with the muscles of the Abdomen, and turned ouer toward y<sup>e</sup> inside, according to the vse of cutting, & afterwarde we haue

cut away all the bowels or entrayles from Mesenterium, the strayght entrayle beyng yet left in the bodye, with also the whole Mesenterium, whose pannicles we haue here somewhat taken away, and set a portion from the other, that the nature of Mesenterium might come to lyght, but this present figure is for this cause principally declared and set forth, that it myght so shewe the position of the matrix or wombe, and the bladder, as in this woman it is seene, no part of the sayde matrix or wombe beyng moued.

For here is as yet no pannicle pluckt away from the matrix or wombe, but that all thinges are here yet wholly seene, lyke wylse as in women  
some

Some what fat they do appeare to the cutter, the bowels beyng taken away. For women are so fatte, that when they be vered and kylled with long sicknesse, and become moste leanest, then they shewe no kynde of processe of vessels, vntlesse the pannicles or thinne couerynges be seperated a sunder.

A.B.C.D. The inner face or part of the former seate of Peritonium.

EE A part of Mesenterium, knitting the thinne intrayles to the backe.

FF Here is noted another pannicle of Mesenterium, plucked from the other which we haue marked with G and G. But both the pannicles do shew the order of the vessels of Mesenterium, and order of the karnelles put betweene the distributions of the vessels.

HH In this part of Mesenterium, the entrails Colon was committed and set to, where it was nyest to the straight gut.

I And in this part of Mesenterium, did consist and stande the beginning of the intrayle Colon, or his continuance with the thinne intrayles, and also the blynde gut.

K The straight gutte beyng there cut of where Colon dyd ende, whiche seate or place is ryght agaynst the place of the knitting together of the hockle bone with the lowest turnyng ioyncte of the loynes.

L The former seate of the bottome of the Matrix, from whence is nothing perceyued pluckt away.

M The right stone or testicle in a woman.

N The

**N** The leste stone of a woman, and the former part of this is here entirely seene, although there be of the ryght but a small portion perceyued, and it is for this cause, that we haue in such manner set foorth the right stone: for both the testicles are covered with a pannicle, whiche pannicle byngeth downe the seede vessels of a woman, whiche do spryng from peritonium: but we haue vncouered the leste testicle of that pannicle, with the hande onlye without any knyfe, leauyng the ryght as you see. For this pannicle doeth not growe to the former seate of the testicle in anye parte thereof, but lyeth there onlye.

**O** A pannicle springing and growyng foorth from the right seate of peritonium, & committing the ryght testicle with the seede vessels on this side, and those vessels whiche infolde the higher seate of the Matrix to the backe, contayning together the Matrix or wombe, and afterwarde with the pannicle of the other side, constituting the seconde cote of the Matrix.

**P** This way in the foresayde pannicle, runne foorth fleshy fibres or thinne skynnes, constituting the ryght Muskle of the Matrix or wombe.

**Q** With these karacters, the pannicle of the left syde is noted, whiche is correspondent and lyke to that pannicle, which the foresayd **O** did poynt to be.

**R** S The former part of the necke of the Matrix, covered as yet, betwene **R** and **S** with that cote which

which 5 partes of peritonium offer vnto it, which bring foorth vessels vnto it, and from it, and do knitte it to peritonium: but the space beyng betwene R and S doth shewe the largenesse of the necke of the Matrix. And the wrynkles whiche are seene here, are they whiche the necke of the Matrix fallng into it selfe, not stretched foorth agayne, doth shewe in the cutting.

**T** The bladder whose hinder part is here chiefly seene, for we haue so caste our eye in the declaration and setting foorth of this figure, as though we woulde principally beholde in the body beyng prostrate and layde along, the hinder seate of the bladder, whiche loketh towarde the Matrix.

For yf ye wyll suppose and imagine this bodye of a woman, to be set byrpyght as that whiche next foloweth, ye shoulde thinke otherwyse then the thing is, that the bottome of the Matrix is set foorth much higher then the bladder.

**V** This is a portion of the nauell, deliuered in the cutting from peritonium, and tourned ouer together with the vesselles seruing properlye to the chylde.

**X** A portion of a bayne goyng from the Nauell to the lyuer.

**Y** A way goyng from the hyghest seate or place of the bottome of the bladder pertaynyng vnto the Nauell, and bryngyng from thence the brine of the chylde, betweene his seconde and the innermost infolder.

Shew

## The first booke.

Ket & She'w two artires creeping forth hyther from the Pauell, by the sides of the bladder, and graft in or continued in this place, to the braunches of the great artire, going principally to the holes of the bones about the priuie members.

**T**he declaration of the seconde figure of the members of women, and of the karacters of the same.



**W**e haue here taken away the skin from the right teate of this present figure, that the nature of the teates myght, as nygh as maye be, be set before the eyes, & afterward we haue cut away the ventricule with the bowels, and also Mesenterium and the Splene, leauing the strayght entrayle in this place vnmedled with, as well as we dyd in the figure before. And moreouer, we haue as it were, taken away from the vttermoost cote whiche Peritonium gaue vnto it, cutting away also all the pannicles, that the vessels carrying forth the substance and matter of seede to the stones, and also the vesselles carrying away the seede from thence to the Matrix, should appeare and be seene. Also we haue tourned ouer the bladder downewarde on the lefte syde, lyke wyse breakyng

breakyng the way or conduite whiche beareth forth the brine to it from the ryght kydney, that the insertion of the wayes of bearyng forth the brine to the bladder myght appeare, and that the bladder shoulde not let the inspection or sight of the Matrix or wombe. Last of all, we haue cutte away from this figure a portion of the bones about the priuie members, that the neckes of the Matrix and of the bladder myght the more commodiously be seene.

AA Waynes runnyng forth oftentymes to the teates, from those wayes whiche are offered to the skynne, whiche is brought ouer the heygth of the shoulder.

B Waynes spryngyng from those baynes whiche are led forth by the arme hole to the hande.

C The pyncipall body of the teate.

DD Karnels and fatnesse spreade abroad euey where on the karnelly body, marked with C.

EFGH The hynder outsyde or insyde of the former seate of Peritoneum outward. For the former region of Peritoneum is here bowed by ward and downewarde towarde the syde.

IK Portions of Waynes and also Artyres, creeppng forth downewarde, vnder the brest bone from the throte.

L The gybolyte or swellng seate of the lyuer.

M The holow part of the lyuer is here also somewhat seene.

N A small portion or peece of the wayne goyng from the Nauill to the lyuer.

O The stocke of vena porta is here cut away, with  
 Ji the

the vessels brought vnto it.

P The holowe bayne.

Q The great artyre.

R The rootes of the artyres goyng to the ventricule, the lyuer, the spleane, the caule, and to the bowelles.

S The begynnynge of a bayne infoldyng the fat coate of the left kydney.

T The bayne and artyre whiche bryngeth the whaythe humour to the ryght kydney.

V The bayne and artyre whiche bryngeth the whaythe humour into the left kydney.

X The begynnynge of the bayne goyng into the fatte coate of the ryght kydney.

Y The former seate of the ryght kydney.

Z The former seate of the left kydney.

aa The way that bryngeth the brine from the ryght kydney into the bladder, but at the nethermour a is broken away but the portion that is left of this way, and is continued to the bladder, marked with b.

b The way that carryeth foorth the brine from the ryght kydney into the bladder.

cc The way that carryeth foorth the brine from the left kydney into the bladder.

dd The ryght seede bayne, whose begynnynge the hygher d doth shewe.

e The seede bayne goyng to the left testicle.

f The spryngyng foorth of the artyres of seede.

g The ryght seede artyre.

h The left seede artyre.

ikl The former part of the bottome of the Matrix,



trix, and i sheweth the ryght blunt angle or corner of the sayde bottome, where k sheweth the left, but l sheweth the region or place of the matrix, where the mouth of his bottome consisteth, and where his necke begynneth.

m This is the strayte gut. And that I may the lesse burden both the sydes of this figure with many letters, I wyll at this present affixe the Characters but on the one syde only.

n A portion of the bayne and artyze of seede, whiche do go to the upper syde of the bottome of the wombe.

o Portions of the baynes and artyze of seede goyng to the testicle, and there ioynng and goyng together, and constituting.

p A body lyke the spire of a steeple, and this letter p doth poynt vs the roote or foundation of this body, whereas the sayde roote or foundation is committed and ioyned to the testicle.

q From that sayde body such vessels runne forth into the tunicles, commyttng and ioynng the testicle to Peritonium.

r The former face or part of the testicle.

s The begynnng of the vessell whiche beareth foorth the seede from the testicle into the Matrix.

tt The bowinges and turninges ouer agayne of the vessell whiche beareth foorth the seede, which turnynges the sayde vessell maketh round about the sydes of the testicle.

v The goyng foorth of the vessell whiche carryeth foorth the seede of the Matrix.

## The first booke.

xx The necke of the Matrix.

y Vessels foldyng in the lower seate of the bottome of the Matrix or wombe, and the necke also of the same.

z A bayne commyng from those vessels to the bladder, which vessels do folde and wynde in the necke of the Matrix, and this Karacter also noteth the insertion of the wayes of the brine.

μ<sup>B</sup> The hynder seate of the bottome of the bladder.

r The Muskle of the necke of the bladder.

A In this seate the necke of the bladder is implanted into the necke of the Matrix.

ε Small skinnie portions of fleshe of the necke of the mouth or openyng of the wombe or Matrix, and the small hyllockes of the Matrix, with the mouth or openyng of the necke thereof, neede here no speciall declaration with Karacters.

ζ The roote of the Artire, goyng into the lowest part of Mesenterium.

α Vessels which do ascende and ryse bywarde to the muskles of the Abdomen, from the Waynes and Artyres whiche do go into the legge.

### The declaration of the Karacters of the thirde figure of women.

**H**is present figure sheweth the matrix or wombe, with the thynne conuerynges whiche do bynde it to *Perigonium*, cut soorth from the bodye, and the

the necke therof is here so folded together, and turned ouer, that the mouth or opening of the bottome of the matrix doth here manifestly shewe it selfe. And we haue lykewyse so opened the bottome and the necke of the bladder, that the holownes of the same, with the insertion of the wayes of brine, are here manifestly sene.

A The former face of the bottome of the matrix, being not yet vncouered of any pannicle.

B B The necke of the matrix.

C A parte of the bottome of the matrix, swelling foorth into the vpper seate of the necke of the matrix, in maner of a hirnell.

D The mouth of the bottome of the matrix.

EE A pannicle knitting the matrix to *Peritoneum*, and conteynyng his vesselles.

F The left testicle of the matrix.

G The bayne and artyre of seede.

H Portion of the seede bayne and artyre, commyng to the vpper seate of the bottome of the matrix.

I A portion of the seede bayne and artyre, commyng to the testicle.

K The vessell caryng the seede from the testicle into the matrix.

L The holownesse of the bladder.

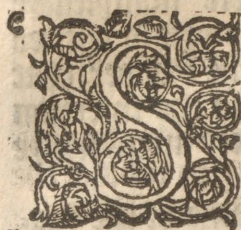
M The insertion of the wayes of the brine.

N Here hangeth foorth a litle peece of the wayes of the brine.

# The first booke.

The declaration of the Characters of the  
fourth table of women.

0 →  
Pam. p. 49.



¶ **S**hall braunches running  
foorth into the pannicle, where  
they are committed and ioyned  
to Peritonium.

¶ A portion of the wayne and  
artire going into the testicle, fal-  
lyng to the vpper seate of the bottome of the ma-  
trix.

¶ The commixtion and goyng together of the  
seede bayne and artyze, that is lyke the spire of  
a steeple, whiche we lyken to the braded baynes  
called Varices.

¶ The left testicle.

¶ The vessell caryng foorth the seede from  
the testicle into the matrix.

¶ The blunte angle or corner of the bottome of  
the matrix, in whom the vessell that bryngeth  
foorth the seede attempteth his insertion.

¶ In this seate the bottome of the matrix is  
ended into the necke thereof, and in this region  
or place is the begynnyng of the mouth or ope-  
nyng place thereof.

¶ The necke of the Matrix or wombe.

¶ Here the necke of the bladder is brought forth  
into the necke of the matrix, and there endeth.

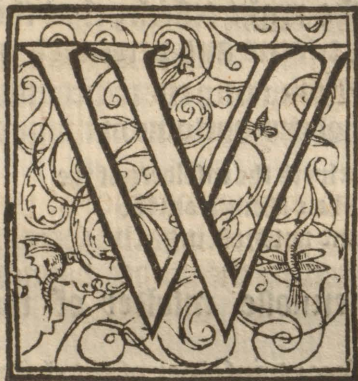
¶ Those are vessels infolding the nether seate of  
the bottome of the matrix, and also his necke.

¶ The swellng brymmes at the mouth of the  
necke of the matrix.

The

iv The wayes that bryng the brine from the raynes into the bladder.

**C** The declaration of the karacters of the. v. vi. vii. and. viii. figures.



**W**haue nowe diuided this fyfth table of the wombe or Matrix, conteynyng a male chylde on the former syde, with a long section or cut, and another whiche are ouerthwart slytte, removing and takyng away into the sydes,

partes of the coates of the bottome of the matrix, yea, euen from the vttermost infolder of the chylde.

**ABCD** The inner syde of the sayde infolder of the matrix, whiche befoze the section was brought about and couered with the infolders of the chylde.

**EE** The vtter syde of the matrix, and the hygher **E** noteth the top or the ryght angle or corner of the matrix, brought forth bpwarde and toward the ryght syde, more then toward the left, because it is a man chylde which is in  $\bar{h}$  wombe.

**F** The fyrste or the vttermolte infolder of the chylde.

**GG** The seconde infolder of the chylde is here

**Jiiii**

also.

also a great part seene.

H A part of the necke of the matrix, to whom in the other syde we haue left growyng to it a bayne and an artire, whiche is pyncipally distributed into the lower seate of the bottome of the matrix.

I Here is also yet left the ryght testicle, that the situation of it myght be seene and perceaued in women beyng with chylde.

**C** The syrte table sheweth the infolders of the chylde, taken whole away from the matrix, and not broken.

K **T** H E vttermoste infolder of the chylde.

**L** L The second infolder of the child, whiche forsomuche as it is transpernaunt in maner of a pannicle, it suffereth the chylde (bewrapt within this third infolder) in it somewhat to be seene.

In the seuenth table we haue diuided the vtter and the seconde infolder of the chylde, with a longe section or cutte, and we haue here expressed and shewed foorth both the sayde infolders, taken away from the thirde infolder, and the thirde infolder also yet whole.

M M The thyrde or the inmoste infolder of the chylde, whiche because it is so thinne that one maye easlye see through it, the fourme of the chylde lying therein, somewhat sheweth hym selfe to the eyes.

N The

**N** The proceeding or order of Waynes and Ar-  
tires, goyng to the Nauyll from the fyrst infol-  
der of the chyld.

**OPOP** The seconde infolder of the chyld.

And **OO** shewe his insyde, where **PP** sheweth  
his vtter syde.

**QR** The fyrste infolder of the chyld, where **Q**  
noteth the outsyde, and **R** the insyde, but the  
proceedyng and order of the vesselles by the se-  
conde and the thyrde infolder, are perfectly kno-  
wen without any helpe of the Characters.



**A**d the eyght Table expresseth the  
chyld delyuered from al his coates,  
and so it sheweth hym lying, by the  
wonderfull prouidence of nature,  
not as the common opinion of the  
bulgar sorte of wyrters affirmeth, but as you  
may here see in these figures, & so doth it lye in  
the middest of the wombe. For it is mooste vnttrue  
that the chyld doth lye in the wombe rounde,  
lyke as it were bowed, so that the knees shoulde  
touche to the face, but as he is set here in the  
viii. figure. And obseruyng this true situation  
of him, you shall fynde commonly none other si-  
tuation of the chyld, nor ioynyng of any ioynt  
of hym therein, then is here expressed.

But in this figure **MMNOPOPQ&R** do  
note the same as in the seuenth Table, saue  
that **M** and **M** do shewe the insyde, or inner part  
of the thyrde infolder. But **S** sheweth here pri-  
uately the goyng forth of the vesselles of the  
Nauyll

## The fyrst Booke.

Matryll, whiche is betweene the Matryll and the ioyning together of the vessels with the chyde infolder, which is also brought forth with a great space betweene the shewyng, where be certayne (as it were) knottes or swellynge, accordyng to the number of the whiche knottes more or lesse, Mydwynes foolyslye do prophesie eyther many or fewe chyldezen to the woman, whiche of the learned men is taken but for a very fantasie, and worthye of reprehention. And mozeouer, when the chylde commeth forth (as it chaunceth sometymes) hauyng that about his necke, they say that it is the same chylde's destynye to be hanged, with many other foolyshe conceytes, rather to be laughed at, then to be beleued.

### The declaration of the Characters of the nynth figure of women.



**N** the nynth figure sheweth the matrix cut forth of the bodye, beyng of that bygnesse as it was seene taken forth of a woman at the laste Anothomye which I did see at the vniuersitie of Padua in Italie. And mozeouer we haue so diuided and cutte asunder the bottome of the Matrix by the myddle, that the concauitie and hollowe bought within the same myght be perceaued, and the thycke substance also of both the coates of the Matrix in women, where they



they be not with chyld.

AABB The concavitie and holow bought of the bottome of the matrix.

CD A line somewhat after the maner of a seame called in Latine *Scortum*, which doth belong to the place wherein the testicle doth lye, whiche swelleth somewhat forth into the bought of the bottome of the matrix.

EE The thicknes of the inner and proper coate of the bottome of the matrix.

FF A portion of the innermer bottome of the matrix, swelling forth downewarde from the hygher seate of the matrix, into the holownesse and bought of the bottome.

GG The beginning of the necke or opening place of the bottome of the matrix.

HH The seconde or uttermer infolder of the bottome of the matrix, descended from *Peritonium*.

II Here we haue reserued a portion on both the sydes of the thinne couerynges, descended from *Peritonium*, and conteynyng the matrix.

K Here is also seene the substaunce of the necke of the matrix, because the cuttyng wherewith we diuided the bottome of the matrix, was begun at this place.

L A part of the necke of the bladder, implanted into the necke of the matrix, castyng forth into it the brine. The swelling partes of *Abdomen* and whatsoeuer is els to be considered thereof, they may be sufficiently knowen without direction of *Karacters*.

FINIS.

## The second Booke.

Of the tyme of byrth. And which is called  
naturall or unnaturall

Cap. i.

**I**n the first booke We haue  
sufficientlye set foorth and  
described the maner, situa-  
tion, & forme of the Ma-  
trix Wherein man is con-  
ceaued, With dyuers other matters ap-  
pendyng and concernyng the better vn-  
derstandyng of the same. And nowe  
here in this seconde Booke, We Wyl de-  
clare the maner of the quytyng and de-  
liueraunce of the Infant out of the mo-  
thers Wombe, With other thinges ther-  
to appertaynyng. And first here in this  
Chapter We Wyl declare the tokens and  
signes Whereby ye may perceauie Whe-  
ther the tyme of labour be neare or not:  
For when the houre of labour appro-  
cheth neare, these signes folowynge euer-  
more proceade and come befoze.  
First certaine dolours and paines be-  
gyn to growe about the guttes, the na-  
pyll, and in the raynes of the backe, and  
like

Tokens to  
know when  
the tyme of  
deliuerance  
is neare.

lyke wyle about the thyghes, and the other places beyng neare to the priue partes, which lyke wyle then beginneth to swell and to burne, and to expell humours, so that it geueth a playne & euident token that the labour is neere.

But ye shall note that there is two maner of byrthes, the one called naturall, the other not naturall. Naturall byrth is, when the chylde is borne both in due seasion, and also in due fashion.

Two sortes of deliuerance.

The due seasion is most commonly after the ninth moneth, or about fortie wekes after the conception, although some be deliuered sometimes in the seuenth moneth, and the chylde proueth very well. But such as are borne in the eyght moneth, other thei be dead befoze the birth, or els liue not long after.

The due fashion of birth is this: first the head commeth forwarde, then foloweth the necke & shoulders, the armes with the handes lying close to the body towarde the feete, the face and forepart of the chylde beyng towardes the face and

The due fashion of byrth.

## The second booke.

and forepart of the mother, as it appeareth in the fyrste of the byrth figures. For as hath ben sayde alreedye in the fyrst booke, befoze the tyme of delyuerance, the chylde lyeth in the mothers wombe the head vpyward, and the feete downewarde, but when it shoulde be deliuered, it is turned cleane contrarpye, the head downewarde, the feete vpyward, and the face towarde the mothers bellye, and that yf the byrth be naturall. Another thyng also is this, that yf the byrth be naturall, the delyuerance is easie without long taryng or lookyng for it.

The byrth not naturall is, when the mother is delyuered befoze her tyme, or out of due season, or after anye other fashyon then is here spoken of befoze: As when both the legges proceede first, or one alone, with both the handes vpy, or both downe, other els the one vpy and the other downe, and diuers otherwise, as shalbe hereafter moze clearelye declared.

Of easie and breasie, difficult, or dolorous deliuerance, and the causes of it:  
With the signes howe to knowe  
and foresee the same.

Cap. ii.

**V**ery many be the perylls, Many perils  
daungers, and thronges, chaunting  
which chaunce to women to women  
in theyr labour, whiche al- in theyr la-  
so ensue and come in diuers bour.  
wayes, and for dyuers causes, suche as  
I shall here declare.

Fyrst when the woman that labour-  
reth is conceaued ouer young, as before  
xii. or xv. yeres of age (whiche chaun-  
seth sometyme, though not very often)  
and that the passage be ouer anguste,  
streate, or narrowe, other naturallye, or  
els for some disease and infirmitie, whi-  
che may happen about the parte, as  
apostumes, pulshes, pyles, or blysters,  
and suche other. Through the whiche  
causes, nature can not (but with great  
dolour and payne) open and dilate it  
selfe, to the expellyng and deliuerance  
of

of the chyld. And sometime the vesicke  
 or bladder, or other intrayles beyng a-  
 bout the Matrix or Wombe, be also a-  
 postumate and blystered, whiche beyng  
 greued, the Matrix or Wombe likewise  
 for vicinitie and neighbourhead is gree-  
 ued with them, & that hindereth great-  
 ly the deliuerance. Also sometyme in  
 the fundament are humorrhodes or pil-  
 les and other pushes, chappynge or  
 chynes, whiche cause great payne. Also  
 hardnesse and difficultie or byndyng of  
 the belly, whiche thinges for the greefe  
 and payne that ensueth of them, cau-  
 seth the woman to haue lytle power to  
 helpe her selfe in her labour.

Furthermore, yf the partie be weake  
 and of feble complexion, or of nature be-  
 ry colde, or to young, or very aged, or ex-  
 ceedyng grosse and fatte, or contrary-  
 wyse to spare and leane, or that she ne-  
 uer had childe before, or that she be ouer-  
 timorous and fearefull, dyuers, way-  
 warde, or such one that wyll not be ru-  
 led, remouyng her selfe from one place

to another, all suche thynges causeth the labour to be muche more paynefull, cruell and dolorous, then it woulde o<sup>r</sup>therwylse be. Also ye must vnderstande that generally the byrth of the man is easier then the byrth of the female.

Item, yf the chylde be of a fuller and greater groweth, then that it maye easily passe that narrowe passage, o<sup>r</sup> contrarywise, yf it be so faint, weake and tender, that it can not turne it selfe, o<sup>r</sup> doth it very slowly, o<sup>r</sup> if the woman haue two chyldezen at once, other els that it with the whiche she labourerh, be a monster: as fo<sup>r</sup> example, yf it hath but one bodye & two heades, as appeareth in the .xviii. of the birth figures, such as of late was seene in the dominion of Werdenbergh.

Agayne, when it proceedeth not in due tyme, o<sup>r</sup> after due fashon, as when it commeth foorth with both feete o<sup>r</sup> both knees together, o<sup>r</sup> els with one foote onelye, o<sup>r</sup> with both feete downewardes, and both handes bywardes, other els (the whiche is most perillous)

K j

sidelong,

sidelong, arselong, or backlong, other  
 els (having two at a byrth) both pro-  
 ceede with their feete fyrst, or one with  
 his feete, and the other with his head,  
 by those and dyuers other wayes the  
 woman sustayneth great dolour, paine,  
 and anguythe.

Item, yf the woman suffer abozse-  
 ment, that is to saye, bryng forth her  
 childe in the.iiii.or.v.moneth after the  
 conception, whiche is before the due  
 tyme, in this case it shalbe great payne  
 to her, for so muche as in that tyme, the  
 porte of the wombe is so firmly and  
 strongly enclosed, that vnneth the point  
 of a needle may enter in at it.

Also if the child be dead in the mothers  
 belly, it is a very perillous thing, for so  
 much as it can not be easily turned, ney-  
 ther can it welde or helpe it selfe to come  
 forth, or if the child be sicke or weakened  
 so that it cannot for feblenes helpe it selfe.

To knowe  
 whether the  
 chylde be  
 weake in  
 the mothers  
 belly.

The which thing may be foresene and  
 knowen by these tokes: If the woman  
 with chylde haue ben long sicke before  
 her



her labour, yf she haue ben soze lasked, if  
 after her conception she haue had dayly  
 and vnwontly her flowzes, yf strayght  
 after one moneth vpon the conception,  
 her brestes yelde any mylke, if the childe  
 stirre not, ne moue at suche tyme as is  
 conuenient for it, these be argumentes  
 and tokens that it shuld be very weake.  
 By what tokens ye shall knowe it is  
 dead, I shall shewe you hereafter.

Also there is great perill in labouring, Perill in the  
secondine.  
 when the secondine or latter birth is o-  
 uer fyne or strong, and wyll not soone  
 riue or breake a sunder, so that the child  
 may haue his easy coming forth. And  
 contrarywyle, when it is ouer weake,  
 slender or thin, so that it breaketh a sun-  
 der before that the chylde be turned, or  
 apt to issue forth, for then the humours  
 whiche are collect & gathered together  
 about this secondine or seconde byrth,  
 passe away soner then they shoulde do,  
 & the birth shal lack his due humidities  
 and moitures, which shuld cause it the  
 easelyer to proceede, & with lesse payne.

Excesse of  
heate or cold  
greatly hin-  
dereth the  
labour.

The birth also is hyndered by ouer-  
muche colde, or ouermuche heate, for in  
ouermuch colde, the passage and all o-  
ther powres of the labouring woman,  
be coarcted and made narrower then  
they woulde otherwyle be. Lykewyle  
ouer much heate debiliteth, weakeneth  
and faynteth both the woman and the  
chylde, so that neither of them in that  
case, can well weld or helpe them selues  
for fayntnes.

And farther yf the woman haue vsed  
to eate cōmonly suche meate or frutes  
which do exiccate or drie, and constraine  
or binde, as Hedlars, Chestnuts, and  
all sowre frutes, as Crabbes, Choke-  
peres, Quinces, and such other, with  
ouer much vse of Uergens, and suche  
lyke sowre sauces, with Rife, Mill, and  
many other thinges, al this shall great-  
lye hinder the byrth.

Also the vse of colde bathes after the  
fifth moneth folowynge the conception,  
or to bathe in such water where Alome  
is, Iron, or Salt, or any suche thynges  
whiche

Whiche do coarcte and constrayne, or yf she haue ben ostentymes heauye and mournyng, or yll at ease, or yf she haue ben kepte ouer hungry and thurstie, or haue vled ouer much watch and wal- kyng: eyther if she vled a litle before her labour thinges of great odour, smell or sauour, for suche thynges (in many mens opinions) attract and drawe by- ward the mother or Matrix, the which is great hynderaunce to the byrth.

Also yf the woman feele payne onlye in the backe and aboue the nauell, and not vnder, it is a signe of harde labour: lykelwyse if she were wont in times pas- sed to be deliuered with great payne, is an euidence and lykelyhod of great la- bour alwayes in the birth.

Nowe signes and tokens of an expe- dite and easy deliuerance, be suche as be contrary to all those that haue ben rehearsed before. As for example, when the woman hath ben wont in tymes passed easily to be deliuered, and that in her labour she feele but litle thronng

Tokens of  
easy deliue-  
raunce.

oz dolor, oz though she haue great paynes, yet they remayne not styll in the vpper partes, but descende alwayes downewardes to the neather partes oz bottome of the belly.

And to be short, in all painefull and troublesome labours, these signes betoken and signifie good spede and lucke in the labour: vnquietnes, muche stirring of the chylde in the mothers belly, all the thronges and paines tomling in the forepart of the bottome of the belly, the woman strong and mightie of nature, such as can wel and strongly helpe her self to the deliuerance of the birth. And againe, euill signes be those, when she sweateth colde sweate, and that her pulces beate and labour ouer soze, and that she her selfe in the labouring faint and solwne, these be vnluckie and mortall signes.

**C**holue a woman with chylde shall vse her selfe,  
and what remedies be for them  
that haue hard labour,

Capit. iiii.

**T**o succour and helpe them that are in such difficult perill of labour, as we haue spoken of before, ye muste obserue, kepe & marke those things that we shal (by the grace of God) shewe you in this Chapter folowynge.

First the woman with chylde muste kepe two diets, the one a moneth before her labour, the other in the very labouring. And aboue al thinges she must eschue & forbear al such occasions which may hynder the birth, to the vttermost of her power, the whiche occasions we rehearsed in the Chapter before. But if there be any such thyng which can not be auoyded, forsomuch as it commeth by nature, or by long continuance and custome in this case: yet ye shal vse some suche remedies, the whiche may somewhat asswage it, molifie it, or make it more easy or tollerable, so that it hinder the birth so much the lesse.

How the labour maye be made more easy.

But if it so be, that any infirmitie or disease, swelling, or other apostumatid

Be iiiij chaunce.

chaunce about the mother or the priuie part, or about the vesike or bladder, as the stone, the strangury, and such lyke, the whiche thinges maye cause suche straytnes and coarctation, that vnneth without great and horrible payne, the partie can be deliuered or discharged. In these cases it behoueth such thinges to be looked vnto and cured, before the tyme of labour commeth, by the aduice of some expert Surgion.

Also if the woman be ouermuch constipat or bounde, most commonly she must vse, the moneth before her labour, suche thynges the which may lenifie, mollifie, dissolue, and lose the belly, as apples fryed with suger, taken fastyng in the mornyng, and after that a draught of pure wyne alone, or els tempred with the iuyce of swete and very ripe apples.

Also to eat figges in the mornyng fasting, and at night, loseth well the belly. If these profite not, *Calsia fistula* taken iii. or.iiii. drams one halfe houre before dyner, shall lose the belly without peril.

Againe

Agayne, in this case she must refrayne from all such thinges as do harden, re-  
strayne, and constipat, as meates broy-  
led or roasted, and ryce, hard egges, biefe,  
chestnutttes, and all sowze fruites, and  
suche lyke.

Also yf farther necessitie require, she  
may receaue a clyster, but it must be ve-  
ry gentle and easye, made of a pynt of  
the broth of a chickin, or other tender  
fleshe, thereto putting so muche course  
suger or hony, as may make it reasona-  
bly sweete, & halfe a sponesfull of whyte  
salt. Or for the pooze woman maye be  
made a clyster of a pint of water, wher-  
in hath ben sod mallowes or holyoke,  
with hony and salt, as befoze. She may  
vse also some other easy and temperate  
purgation, to molifie and lose her with-  
all, as Mercury sodden with flesh in po-  
tage, and diuers such other, or els a sup-  
positor tempered with sope, larde, or the  
yolkes of egges.

Things to  
lose y belly.

And yf it chaunce that (the labour  
drawing neare) she waxe faynt or sicke-

therwith  
to comfozt  
the woman  
in her la-  
bour.

## The seconde booke.

Iye, then must ye comfort her With good comfortable meate, drinke, holosome and noble electuaries, and in this time must she do all such thynges the Whiche can make her apte and sufficient to her labour, and to vse such thinges the Which may laxe, open, and mollifie the nature and passage, so that the byrth maye the more freely proceede, and that chiefly in the younger Women. The elder Women, for because that those partes in them be somewhat dryer and harder, therefore they must vse hoat and moyst thinges, Which haue proprietie to lenifie and souple, and that both in meate and drynke, and also in outwarde fomentations, bathynges, suppositoies, and annoyntmentes.

Annoyntments  
to souple.

Annoyntmentes Wherewith ye may souple the priuie place, be these, Hennes grece, Duckes grece, Goose grece, also oyle Olive, Lineseede oyle, or oyle of Fenegreke, or the viscolite of holpocke, and such other: & for drynke, let her vse good rype Wine mixed with Water: also  
there



there muste be a consyderation in the dieting of the woman, that she maye vse suche thinges the whiche may moysten her, and not make her fatte. Contrary wyle, let her auoyde such thynges the whiche shoulde exicate, drye, constrainne, or coarct her, and that all the moneth before her labour. But about ten dayes before the tyme (yf she feele anye payne or greefe) let her vse euery day to washe or bathe her with warme water, in the whiche also that she tarye not ouerlong in bathyng for weakning of her, and therein let her stande, so that the water come aboute the nauyll a litle, and also seathe in the water Malloves, Holyoke, Camomell, Mercurie, Baydenheyre, Lyneseede, Fenegreke seede, and suche other thynges whiche haue vertue to mollifie and sofle. And yf it be so, that for weakenesse of the body she may not endure this bathyng in warme water, then with a sponge or other cloth dypped in the foresayde bath, let her lokyngly washe her feete, her

Bathes to  
lose & genti-  
lye to open  
the body.

her thyghes, and her priuie partes, the  
whiche thynges shall greatly profite to  
her. But in such tyme beware ye come  
not in the common hot houses, for they  
would cause you to be feeble and faynt,  
which were yll in this case.

Annoynt-  
mentes to  
soyle,

And when ye are thus bathed or wa-  
shed, then shall it be very conuenient for  
you to annoynt with the foresayde gre-  
ces and oyles, your backe, belly, nauyl,  
sydes, and suche places as are neare to  
the priuie partes. Furthermoze, it shal-  
be greatly profitable for her to conuey  
inwarde into the priuie part these fore-  
sayd oyles or greeces with a sponge, or  
other thyng made for the purpose, she  
lying byright, the middes of her bodye  
most hiest, so that it maye the better re-  
mayne within her, and that chieflye yf  
the Matrix be drie, other els the partie  
very leane and spare.

Sweete  
fumes.

It shalbe also very profitable for her to  
suffume the nether places with Muske,  
Ambre, Gallia Muscata, which put on  
embres, yelde a goodly sauour, by the  
which

Whiche the neather places open themselves, and drawe downeward.

Also as I sayde before, she must take good hede to her diet, that she take thinges the which may comfort and strengthen the body, feeding not ouermuch of any thing, and to drinke pleasaunt and well sauering wine, or other drinke, also inoderatly to exercise the body in doying some thing, styring, mouing, goyng, or standyng, moze then otherwyse she was wont to do, these thinges farther the byrth and make it the easier, and this is the maner of diet the which we aduise the woman to kepe the moneth before her labour or longer.

Another dyet there is, the which she ought to obserue in the tyme of labour, when the stormes and thzonges begyn to come on, and the humours which yet hitherto haue remained about the Matrice or mother collected, nowe begynne to flowe foorth, and this maner of dyet consisteth in two sortes. First that suche thinges be procured & had in redinesse,

Whiche

that is to  
be done whē  
the tyme of  
labour is  
come.

The seconde booke.

Whiche may cause the byrth oz labour to be very easy. Secondly to withstand, defende, and to put away so neare as may be the instant and present dolours. And as touching this poynt, it shalbe very profitable for her, for the space of an houre to sit still, then (rysing agayne) to go by and downe a payre of stayres, crying oz reachyng so loude as she can, so to styre her selfe.

And also it shalbe verye good for a tyme, to retayne and kepe in her breath, for because that through that meanes, the guttes and intrayles be thrust together, and depressed downewarde. Also it shalbe very good to receaue some medicine to prouoke the birth, of the which we wyll speake moze hereafter.

Nowe when the woman perceaueth the Matrix oz Mother to ware laxe oz loose, and to be dissolued, and that the humours issue foorth in greate plentie, then shal it be meete for her to sit downe leaning backward in maner byrpyght.

Of the Wifes  
toifes scoole.

For the which purpose in some regions

(as

(as in Fraunce & Germany) the Midwifes haue stoles for the nonce, whiche beyng but lowe, and not hye from the grounde, be made so compassewyle and caue or holowe in the middes, that that may be receaued from vnderneath whiche is looked for, and the backe of the stoole leaning backward, receaueth the backe of the woman: the fashion of the whiche stoole, is set in the begynning of the byrth figures hereafter.

And when the tyme of labour is come, in the same stoole ought to be put many clothes or cloutes in the backe of it, the which the Midwife may remoue from one side to another, according as necessitie shall require. The Midwife her selfe shall sit before the labouryng woman, and shall diligentlly obserue and wayte, how much, and after what meanes the chylde styreth it selfe: also shall with her handes, fyrst annoynted with the oyle of Almondes, or the oyle of whyte Lillies, rule and direct every thing as shall seeme best.

Also

## The seconde booke.

The Mid-  
wyfe must  
geue com-  
fortable  
wordes to  
the partie  
trauayling.

Also the Midwyfe muste instruct and comfort the partie, not onely refreshing her with good meate and drinke, but also with sweete wordes, geuyng her good hope of a spedefull deliuerance, encouraging and enstomakyng her to patience and tollerance, byddyng her to holde in her breath so muche as she may, also streckyng gently with her handes her belly aboute the Nauell, for that helpeth to depresse the byrth downewarde.

But and yf the woman be any thing grosse, fat, or fleshy, it shalbe best for her to lye groueling, for by that meanes the Matrix is thrust and depressed downewarde, annoynting also the priuie partes with the oyle of white Lillies. And yf necessitie require it, let not the Midwyfe be afrayde ne ashamed to handle the places, and to relaxe and loose the straightes, (for so muche as shall lye in her) for that shal helpe well to the more expedite and quicke labour.

But this muste the Midwyfe aboue  
all

all thynges take heede of that the com-  
pel not the woman to labour before the  
byrth come forward, and she we it selfe.  
For before that tyme, all labour is in  
vayne, labour as much as ye lyst. And  
in this case many tymes it commeth to  
passe, that the partie hath laboured so  
soze before the time, that when she shuld  
labour in deede, her might and strength  
is spent before in vayne, so that she is  
not now able to helpe her selfe, and that  
is a perrilous case.

To labour  
much before  
the due time  
doth but fe-  
ble the wo-  
man, and no  
thing profit

Furthermore, when the Secondine  
or seconde byrth (in the which the byrth  
is wrapped and conteyned) doth once  
appare, then maye ye knowe that the  
labour is at hand. wherfore if the same  
secondine breake not of his owne kinde,  
it shalbe the Midwyfes part and office,  
with her nayles easily and gentellye to  
breake and rent it, or yf that maye not  
conueniently be done, then rayse vp be-  
twene your fingers a peece of it, and cut  
it of with a payre of sheares, or sharpe  
knyfe, but so that ye hurt not the byrth

With the cut. This done, by and by ensueth consequently the flux and flowe of humours, of the whiche I spake before, and then next foloweth immediatly the byrth.

But yf it so chaunce that the Seconde should be cut by the Hydwyse, and all the Watery part issued and spent before due time & necessitie shoulde require it, so that the priuie passage be leste exicate and drye, the byrth not yet appearing, by this meanes the labour should be hindered and letted. In this case ye shall annoynt and molifie that priuie passage with the oyle of Whyte Lyllyes, or some of the greases spoken of before, fyrst warmed, and so conueyed into the priuie partes, the whiche thynges wyll cause the waye to be slyppery, souple, and easie for the birch to passe. But cheefely in these difficulties should profite the Whyte of an egge, together with the yolke powred into the same place, whiche should cause it to be most slypperye and slydyng, and supplie the  
roome



roome of the natural humidities spent before.

And yf it be so, that the byrth be of a great growth, and the head sticke in the commyng forth, then muste the Wydwyfe helpe all that she may, with her hande fyrst annoynted with some oyle, openyng and enlargyng the way, that the issue may be the freer. Lyke wyse must be done yf she beare two children at once. And all this is spoken of the naturall byrth, when that fyrst proceedeth the head, and then the rest of the body ordynately, as ye may see in the fyrst of the byrth figures folowing.

ii. But when the byrth commeth not naturally, then must the Wydwyfe do all her diligence and payne (if it may be possible) to turne the byrth tenderlye with her annoynted handes, so that it may be reduced agayne to a naturall byrth. As for example: Sometyme it chaunceth the chyld to come the legges & both armes & handes downward, close to the sydes fyrst forth, as appeareth

The head  
proceedyng  
fyrst.

The legges  
& both handes  
downe,  
proceedyng  
fyrst.

The legges  
& both handes  
downe,  
proceedyng  
fyrst.

In the seconde of the byrth figures. In this case the Gydwylfe must do all her payne With tender handlyng and annoynting to receaue foorth the chylde, the legges beyng still close together, and the handes like wise remaynyng, as appeareth in the sayde seconde figure.

Howbeit, it were farre better (if it may be done by any possible wayes or meanes) that the Gydwylfe shoulde turne these legges commyng fyrst foorth, bywardes agayne by the bellywarde, so that the head myght descende downeward by the backe part of the wombe, for then naturallie agayne and without peryll myght it proceede and come foorth as the fyrst.

The third  
of the byrth  
figures.

Agayne sometyme the byrth cometh forth With both legges and feete first, the handes beyng lysted vp aboue the head of the chylde, and this is the perilloust maner of birch that is, as appeareth in the third of the birch figures. And here must the Gydwylfe do what she may to turne the byrth (if it may be possi-

possible) to the first figure, and yf it wyll not be, then reduce the handes of it downe to the sydes, and so to reduce it into the seconde figure. But yf this also wyll not be, then receaue the feete as they come forth, and bynde them with some fayre linnen cloth, and so tenderly and very softly lose out the byrth tyll all be come forth, and this is a very ieopardous labour.

iiii. Also sometyme the byrth com-  
meth foorth with one foote onely, the  
other being left bywarde, as appeareth  
in the fourth figure. And in this case it  
behoueth the labouryng woman to lay  
her byrth bypon her backe, holdyng  
by her thyghes & belly, so that her head  
be the lower part of her bodye, then let  
the Wydwyfe with her hande returne  
in agayne the foote that commeth out  
first, in as tender maner as may be, and  
warne the woman that laboureth to  
styre and moue her selfe, so that by the  
mouyng and styryng, the byrth maye  
be turned the head downeward, and so

The fourth  
figure.

The second booke.

to make a naturall byrth of it, and then to set the woman in the stoole agayne, and to do as ye dyd in the fyrste figure. But yf it be so, that notwithstanding the mothers styrreng and mouyng, the byrth do not turne, then must the Midwyfe with her hande softlye fetch out the other legge whiche remainned behynde, euermore takyng heede of this, that by handlyng of the chylde, she do not remoue ne set out of theyr place the two handes hangyng downe warde towarde the feete.

The fyfth  
figure.

v. Lyke wyse sometyme it commeth to passe, that the syde of the chylde commeth forwarde, as appeareth in the. v. figure, and then must the Midwyfe do so, that it may be returned to his naturall fassion, and so to come forth.

The sixth  
figure.

vi. Also sometyme the chylde commeth forth the feete forwarde, the legges beyng abroad, as in the. vi. figure, and then must the Midwyfe see, that the feete and legges may be ioyned together, and so to proceede and come forth,  
euer:

euermore regardyng the handes, as I warned you before.

vii. If it come with one of the knees or both forwarde, as in the .vii. figure, then must the Midwyfe put by the birth, til such times as the legges & feete come ryght forth, & then to do as afoze.

The .vii. figure.

viii. When the chylde cometh headlong, one of the handes comyng out and appearng before, as in the .viii. figure, then let the byrth proceede no farther, but let the Midwyfe put in her hande, and tenderly by the shoulders thurst in the byrth agayne, so that the hand may be resettled in his place, and the byrth to come foorth ordynately and naturally, as in the fyrt figure: But yf by this meanes the hande come not to his conuenient place, then let the woman lye vpryght with her thyghes and belly vpwordes, and her head downewordes, so that by that meanes it may be brought to passe, and then byng her to her seate agayne.

The .viii. figure.

ix. But yf it proceede with bothe handes

The .ix. figure.

The second Booke.

handes forwardes, then muste ye lyke-  
wise do as afoze, by the shoulders thru-  
styng it backe agayne, vntyll suche tyme  
as the hands lye close to the sides, & so to  
come forth, as appeareth in the .ix. figure.

The .x. fi-  
gure.

x. But when it commeth arswarde,  
as in the .x. figure may be seene, then  
must the Mydwife with her handes re-  
turne it agayne, vntyll suche tyme that  
the birth be turned, the legges and feete  
forwarde: other els, yf it maye be so, it  
were best that the head might come for-  
warde, and so naturally to proceede.

The .xi. fi-  
gure.

xi. And yf so be that it appeare and  
come forth first with the shoulders, as  
in the .xi. figure, then must ye fayze and  
softlye thrust it backe agayne by the  
shoulders, tyll suche tyme as the head  
come forwarde.

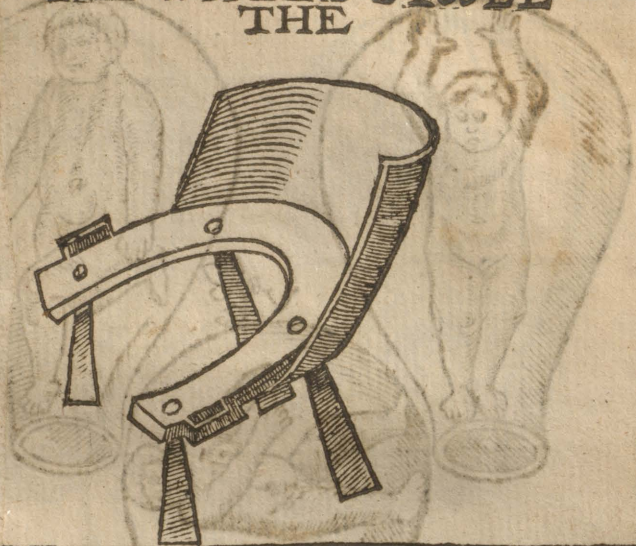
The .xii. fi-  
gure.

xii. But when the byrth commeth  
foorth with both the handes and both  
the feete at once, as in the .xii. figure,  
then must the Mydwife tenderly take  
the chylde by the head, and returne the  
legges vpwarde, & so to receaue it forth.

xiii. And

See leaf  
xlviij

# THE BIRTH FIGVRES THE WOMANS STOOLE THE



THE BYRTHE

III

III



VI



VII





FIGVRES

IX



VIII



X



XI



XII



THE BYRTHE FIGVRES

XIII

XIII



XV



XVI



XVII



xiii. And when it commeth brestward as in the. xiii. figure, the legges and handes bydyng behynde, then let the Mydwyfe take it by the feete or by the head, whiche that shalbe mooste apt and commodious to come sozwarde, returnyng the rest byward, & so to receaue it forth: but if it may be hedling, that shalbe best.

The. xiii. figure.

xiiii. Nowe sometyme it chaunceth the woman to haue two at a burthen, & that both proceede together headlong, as in the. xiiii. figure, and then must the Mydwyfe receaue the one after the other, but so, that she let not slyppe the one, whylest she taketh the fyrst.

The. xiiii. figure.

xv. If both come foorth at once with theyr feete sozward, then must the Mydwyfe be very diligent to receaue first the one, and then the other, as hath ben shewed before.

The. xv. figure.

xvi. When the one commeth headlong, the other foote wyse, then must the Mydwyfe helpe the byrth that is mooste nearest the issue, and it that commeth footelong (if she can) to returne it bypon the

The. xvi. figure.

## The second Booke.

the head, as is spoken of before, takyng  
euer heede that the one be not noysome  
to the other in receauyng soorth of ey-  
ther of them.

And to be short, let the Wydwyfe of-  
ten tymes annoynt & mollifie the waye  
and passage with some of the foresayde  
oyntmentes, to make the womans la-  
bour so muche the easier, and haue the  
lesse trauayle and payne. And yf there  
chaunce to be any Apostume or diseale  
about those places in this tyme, by suche  
annoyntyng to alaye and swage the  
payne, so that for the tyme it may be the  
lesse greefe to the partie, as I spake be-  
fore also. And for them that be in this  
case, it shalbe best to lye grouelyng, as I  
sayde of the grosse, fatte, and fleshy wo-  
man.

Remedies and medicines by the which the la-  
bour may be made moze tollerable, easy,  
and without great payne.

Cap. v.

The

**T**he thynges whiche helpe the birth & make it more easie, are these. First the woman that laboureth muste eyther sytte groueling, or els byright, leaning backward, accordyng as it shall seeme commodious and necessary to the partie, or as she is accustomed. And in wynter or colde weather, the chamber wherin she laboureth must be warmed, but in sommer or hotte wether, let in the aire to refresh her withall, lest betwene extreme heate and labour the woman faynt and sowe. And furthermore, she must be prouoked to sneesyng, and that eyther with the powder of Eleborus, or els of peper. Also the sydes of the woman must be stroken downewarde with the handes, which thyng helpeth greatly & furthereth. And let the Midwyfe alwaye be very diligent, prouidyng and seing what shalbe necessary for the woman, annoyntyng the priuities with oyle, or other suche greace as I spake of before, in this fashion.

Meanes to  
helpe & pro-  
uoke the  
birth.

The

## The second booke.

A good mol-  
lifying oint-  
ment.

Take the oyle of whyte Lyllyes or Duches grese, & with that temper two graynes wayght of Saffron, and one grayne of Huske, and therewith annoynt the secrete partes. If this profite nothyng, then vse this suffumigation.

Take Myrrhe, Galbanum, Castorium, let those be beaten, and make lyke pylles of them, tempered together with bulles gall: then take a dram of these pylles, and put it on hoate coales, and let the woman receaue the fume and sauour of it vnderneath.

Another perfume: Take yelowz byrnstone, myrrhe, Mader, Galbanum, Oppoponacum, of ech lyke much, and temper al those together, making of them pylles, and with those also ye may make fume, to be receaued vnderneath.

Item, the fume of Culuer dung, or of Haukes dung, by puttyng to of Oppoponacum, is soueraigne for the same. All these fumes open the poores beneath, and causeth nature to be the freer in delyueraunce.

Also it is very good to dyp woll in the iuyce of Rue, and the same to conuey into the secretes. Also the powder of Aristolochia rotunda, or the roote called Bothor martis, Ciclaminus, or malum terre, or the seede of Stauisagre, any of these wrapped in woll, and conueyed inwarde, prouoketh and calleth forth the byrth.

Item take Heleborus, Oppoponacum, & wrap them together in wooll, and minister them inwarde, for that will bryng foorth and prouoke the birth, whether it be al्यूe or dead. Also the rynde

rynde and barke called Cassia lignea beaten to powder, and tempered with wine and drunken, prouoketh well the byrth.

Item Asa fetida, of the bygnes and wayght of a pease, mingled together with Castorium of the wayght of a dram, beaten together and tempered with wine myrt with water, and so drunken, is very good to prouoke the byrth. Also Canell drunke with wine is very good.

Item, take a scruple of Roses, with the water of the seede of fenegreke, Cicercula, Maydenhayze, all beaten together and sodden, and the oyle of bleweflowredeluce, a small quantitie tempered therewithall, and then geue it to the woman that laboureth, and it shall prouoke the byrth greatly. And Cassia lignea and Asa fetida drunke with wine, be very good for the same.

Also Holyoke sodden in cinduite water and drunken, is soueraigne for the same purpose, and it is verie good for her to washe her in the water in the which this Holyoke is decocte and sodden.

Item, certayne pylles the whiche make the labour easie and without payne.

Take Canell, or Cinamome, and Sauiue, of eche a dram, of Cassia lignea a dram and a halfe, of Myrthe, Aristolochia rotunda, & Costus amarus, of ech a dram, of Storax liquida halfe a dram, and of Oppium the waight of. xii. graynes, beate these altogether, & fourne them into pylles, and geue vnto the woman two drammes of these pylles with

## The second booke.

with two ounces of good olde wine.

Item Saffron and Syler montanum prouoketh the byrth of any lyuyng thyng, yf it be drunken: howbest to a woman geue neuer passyng a dram at once of Saffron, for greater quantitie should greatly hurt.

Item, take .v. drammes of Sauine, of Rue or hearbe grace one dragma and a halfe, of Juniper beryes two drams, of Asa fetida, Amoniacū, Madder, of eache two drammes, of these make pylls, geuen to the woman in labour, with water in the which is sodden Sauine and Pen-triall, or els with the broth of Cicercula, and the iuyce of Rue shall helpe very greatly.

Item, take two drammes of Sauine, of Asa fetida, Amoniacum and Madder, of eache halfe a dram, these temper together in pylls, and geue her with wine one dram of the same.

Item, take of Aristolochia longa, Pepper, and Myrre, of eche lyke muche, confict them together with wine, and make pylls of them, and minister them with an ounce of water of the decoction of Lupines, these pylls be of suche efficacy and strength, that it alleuiateth and brayneth the byrth, it deliuereth the Matrix or Mother from all maner of byrth, be it alpye or dead.

Item, take of whyte Bedellium, Myrre, and Sauine, of eche lyke muche, temper these with Cassia lignea, and Hony, and make pylls of them to the bygnesse of Peason, and of these pylls geue at ech tyme siue to the labouryng woman, which



whiche be of the same myght and strength, that the other pylls spoken of here next before are.

Item, take of Myrre, Castorium, and Storax, of eche one dram, temper them with Hony, and make pylls of it: these for this purpose excel and passe all other, they be of such vertue and strength in operation.

### A plaster to prouoke the byrth.

Take wilde Gowarde, and seethe it in water, in the same water temper Myrre, the iuyce of Rue, and Barlye meale, so much as shalbe sufficient, stampe these thynges together, and make it platter wyse, then lay it to the womans bellye betweene the Nauyll and the nether part: This plaster shall helpe marueylously.

And although many other thynges there be which haue vertue and powver to prouoke birth, and to helpe it, yet leauyng all suche thynges for breuitie and shortnesse, we haue set here only a certayne, whose efficacie and powver shalbe sufficient to this present purpose.

The second booke.

How the secondine or second birth

shalbe forced to issue forth, if it come not  
freely of his owne kynde.

Cap. 6.



Ere also sometime it cometh to passe, that the Secondine whiche is wont to come together with the byrth, remayne and tarrye behynde, and folowe not, and that for diuers causes. One is, for because peradventure the woman hath ben so sore weakened and feeblished with trauaile, dolour and payne of that fyrst byrth, that she hath no strength remaynyng to helpe her selfe, to the expellyng of the seconde byrth. Another may be, that it be entangled, tyed, or let within the matrix (whiche chaunceth many tymes) or that it be destitute of humors, so that the water be flowen from it sooner then tyme is, whiche shoulde make the places more slipperie and more easie to passe thoroowe: Or els that the places ouer weeryed with long & sore labour,

for

for payne contract or gather together, and enclose them selfe agayne, or that the places be swolne for anguiste and payne, and so let the comming forth of the seconde byrth.

But to be short, of whatsoener cause it be thus stopped, the Bydwyse in any wyse muste fynde such meanes, that it may be vnloosed and expelled. For othervyse, great inconueniencie shoulde chaunce to the partie, & specially suffocation and choking of the Matrix, whiche also must so much the more be taken hede to, for because the seconde byrth restrained and kept within, wyll soone purrifie and rot, whereof wil ensue ill noysome & pestiferous vapours ascendyng to the heart, the braynes, & the midriffe, through the which meanes the woman shalbe short winded, faynte hearted, often sounding, and lying without anye maner of mouyng or styrre in the pulces: yea, and many times is playnely suffocated, strangled, and dead of it. Wherefore that none of these thinges  
Di happen

happen, With all diligence and payne it muste be prouided that the secondine be expelled.

Retention  
of flowres  
foz weake-  
nesse.

If retention of it come by Weakenesse of the labourer, through long trauaile, then must she be recomforted & streng-  
thed With good comfortable meates and drinckes which may enheart her, as broath made of the yolcke of Egges, or With good olde Wine, and good fat and tidie fleshe, or Byrdes, Hennes flesh, Capons, Partridge, Piggins and such lyke.

And yf retention of this secondine come, because the place is contract together agayne, eyther els that the Matrix is swollen for long paine, then must be vsed suche thinges to prouoke it out, the whiche do make the way slipper, soyle, & easie for it to proceede, With the oyles or ointmentes spoken of befoze, as oyle of Whyte Lillies, of *Maiorum*, and of blewe Lillies. Item, the beries of Juniper, or Galbanū beaten to powder and dronke With luke warmed Wine, Wyl cause the same to  
issue

issue out.

Item, Sothernwood, or els Penitrial  
sodden in Wyne, and the decoction dron-  
ken, is of the same vertue.

Item to suffume the secretes With  
the perfumes Written of before, is good  
for this purpose, and the vapour of the  
Water in Whiche Gallowes, Holyoke,  
and Beresfoote be sodden, receaued be-  
neath, is lyke good.

Also to walhe that partes in Water  
in Whiche is sodden byanne, or to holde  
a litle bagge full of sodden byanne to  
the place, and therewithall to soke the  
place, is very profitable.

But yf the retention of the secondine  
come by reason that it is entangled or  
fastened in some place of the matrix, so  
that it Wyl not resolue ne loole, then  
make a fume vnderneath of bymstone,  
Iuie leaues, and Cresses, or els of Cres-  
les and Fygges.

Also of all odoriferous and Sweete  
smelling thinges, as Ambre, Muske,  
Frankencense, Gallia Muscata, and confec-  
tion

tion neare, the Which sauoures and per-  
fumes put on the embers, muste be so  
closely receiued vnderneath, that no part  
of the smell do ascende to the nose of the  
Woman. For to the nose shoulde the sa-  
uoure of nothing come, but only of such  
thinges, the Which stinke, or haue abho-  
minable smel, as *Ala fetita*, *Castoriū*, mans  
hayre or womans hayre burnt, *Pe-*  
*cockes fethers burnt*. Item, in this case  
it shalbe very good to make a perfume  
vnderneath, of the houe of an asse, Which  
thinges although they be of yll saour,  
yet they be of suche nature and efficacie,  
that they occasionate not onlye the se-  
condine, but also dead byrthes to pro-  
ceede and come forth out of the *Matrrix*.

And in this case also let the woman  
holde her breath inwarde so muche as  
she can, for that shall dryue downward  
suche thynges as be in the body to be  
expelled.

Item, let her be prouoked to snee  
with the powder of *Eleborus* or *Pepper*  
put in the nose, holding her mouth and  
nose

nose so close as may be.

Also the oyntment whiche is called Vnguentum Basilicon conueyed into y<sup>e</sup> matrix, is very good, for it mollifieth the place, and draweth out the secondine perforce, the which so sone as it is expelled, include the oyle of Roses into the same matrix. Item Rose water tempered with a quantitie of the powder of Holyoke, and Dronke, is good to expell the secondine.

And yf it be so that any parte of the secondine do appeare, let the Midwyfe receaue it tenderlye, loosing it out fayre and softly lest it breake, and if ye doubt that it wil breake, then let the Midwife tye that parte of the which she hath handfast, to the womans legge or foote, not very strayght lest it breake, neyther very laxe lest it slip in agayne, and then cause her to sneese. Nowe yf the secondine tary or sticke, so that it come not quicklye forwarde, then loose it a litle and a litle very tenderly, wreathing it from one side to another, tyll such tyme

The seconde booke.

as it be gotten out, but euer beware of  
violent and hasty mouing of it, lest that  
with the seconde byrth ye remone the  
Matrix also.

And yf in this meane Whyle the wo-  
man faynt oꝝ solwe by reason of greate  
payne ensuyng of the takyng awaye of  
this secondine, then must ye minister  
such thinges to her the which comforte  
the head & the heart, as be electuaries  
which are confict with Muske, Ambre,  
and the confection of precious stones,  
as Diamargariton, and suche other. Also  
suche thinges the whiche comfort the  
stomacke, as Diagalanga, Dia cinamomum, &  
such lyke, whiche are allwaye in a redy-  
nesse at the Apothecaries, the whiche  
also she shall receaue with wine.

Item to remoue the secondine, & to ex-  
pel it, take Rue, Horehounde, Sothern-  
wood, and Gotherwurte, of eche lyke  
quantitie, and then take so much of the  
oyle of Lyllyes, as may be sufficient to  
steepe, moysten, and soke the foresayde  
herbes



hearbes in, put all this together into a glased potte, couered With suche a couer that it haue a litle hole or venter aboue in the toppe of it, and sette this potte ouer the fyre of coales, so that it boyle a litle Whyle, then take it from the fyre, & set it vnder the stoole where the woman sytteth, made for the nonce, hauyng a pype made for the purpose, of the Whiche the one ende ye shall put into the venter or hole of the couer of the pot, and the other ende must the partie receaue into her body, and so to sit closed rounde about With clothes, that no vapour or ayre go forth of the potte, hauyng a fewe coles vnder it to kepe it hotte: and thus sytte the space of an houre or two, tyll suche tyme as the secondine moue or begyn to proceade of his owne kynde.

And yf it be so that ye profite not this Wayes, yet then laye this plaster on the belly betweene the nauyll and the secretes, of the Which we shall speake  
 Duy hereafter,

The seconde booke.

Hereafter, the Which is of suche operati-  
on and efficacie, that it expelleth dead  
birthes. If for al this y<sup>e</sup> secondine come  
not forwarde, then leaue it, and vse no  
more medicines ne remedies to that  
purpose, but let it alone, for within few  
dayes it wyll putrifie and corrupt, and  
dissolue vnto a Watery substance, thicke  
lyke bryne or other fer mixed with wa-  
ter, and so issue forth. Howbeit, in the  
meane whyle it wyll put the woman to  
great paine in the head, in the heart, &  
in the stomacke, as we touched before.

**H**owe that many thinges chaunce to  
the women after their labour, and howe  
to auoyde, defende, or to remedie the  
same. Cap. vi.

**I**s also to be vnderstanded  
that many times after the de-  
liueraunce, happeneth to wo-  
men other y<sup>e</sup> feuer or ague, or  
swelling, or inflation of the body, other  
tumblyng in the belly, or els commoti-  
on or lettelyng out of order of the Mo-  
ther

ther or Matrix . Cause of the whiche things , is sometimes lacke of due and sufficient purgation and clesing of the flowres after the birth , or els contrary- wyle ouermuch flowyng of the same, which soze doth weaken the woman. Also the great labour and styring of the Matrix in the byrth.

Then as oft as it commeth for lacke of due purgation of the flowres , there muste be ministred suche thynges the which may prouoke the same, whether it be by medicines taken at the mouth, or by lotion and washing of the feete, or by fumes, or odour, or emplastration, or by decoction of herbes seruing to that purpose, or els by oyntmentes, and such other things , accordyng as the person or the perill doth require, of the whiche things felwe or no women be ignozant. And ye must take diligent hede that she be exactly and vtterly purged, to this be agreable all suche simples the whiche prouoke brine , and open the vaynes, makyng free way for the blood to passe  
and

The seconde booke.

and sende the humours and matter downward, as Gotherwurt, Asarum, Saune, Peniriall, Parcely, Charuyll, Annis seede, Fenell seede, Juniper berries, Rue, Bay berries, Germaunder, Valerian, Lyme, Cinamome, Spike-narde, and such other. Al those thinges as they do prouoke and cause vrine, so do they also prouoke & cause the flow-ers to depart. Howbeit, as neare as ye can, vse none of these thinges without the counsaile of an experte Physition, lest whylest ye helpe one place, ye hurt another. Also to sneese, helpeth muche to this matter, & to holde in the breath, enclosing the nose and the mouth. Also fumigation made of the eyes of salte fishes, or of the houe of a horse vnderneath, prouoketh the flowres. If ye profite not by this meanes, then being able to beare it, let her blood in the vaine called Saphina, vnder the ancles of the feete, for this prouoketh flowres cheefely of all other thynges.

Lyke wyle do, yf the woman haue the  
ague.

ague after her labour, for that cometh of like cause by retention of the flowres, and in the feuer let her vse to drinke water, in the which is decocte Barley beaten, or Cicer and barley together, or water in whiche be sodden Tamarindi, or Whay of mylke, and let her eate a cullis made of a Cocks, and sweete Pomegranates, for these thinges do prouoke the flowres, and mittigateth the immoderate heate, refreshing greatly the body, loosyng and opening suche thinges the which before were constricted and cludged together.

For the ague in women with chylde.

If the body after labour do swell and inflate, then let her drinke water, in the which is sodden Cicer & Cummin, beaten together.

Item good olde wine with the electuarie called Diaciminum, or of Trochiskes of Alkecheengie, otherwyle called Halicacabus.

Also in this case a clyster made of suche thynges the which do banquishe and expell ventosities and wyndynesse, as Annis seede, fenell seede, Rue the hearbe and the seede, Bay berries,

Cum

## The seconde booke.

cummin. &c. Also a pessarie or suppositar made for  
that part of Aristolochia Rotunda, Squinantum,  
Storax Liquida, Dorenicum, Zeduaria.

Agayne, yf the woman after her labour haue  
frettyng and gnawing of the guttes and payne  
of the Matrix, and other secrete partes there a-  
bout, then let her vse the vapour and fume of  
suche thinges the whiche haue vertue to miti-  
gate, swage, and alay the payne, as Hallowes,  
Holoche, Fenegreke, Comin, Camomell, and  
Sauine. Of these also make emplasters and  
bagges, the whiche may be applied to the pay-  
ned places.

Also to annoynt y<sup>e</sup> places with Oleum sesaminū  
(yf it were to be had) or with oyle of sweete Al-  
mondcs. And yf no greate heate do abounde in  
the woman, she maye drinke Triacle, or Trifera  
magna, with wine in whiche is decoct Mother-  
wort or Huggewort.

Also agaynst payne in the priuie partes, take  
Peniriall, Policaria, sixe leaues of baye tree, seeth  
them together, and receaue the vapour vnder-  
neth closely.

Item, take Rue, red Motherwort, Sothern-  
wood, beate them together, and temper them  
with the oyle of Peniriall, and put all together  
into a pot, and set it ouer the fyre a whyle tyll it  
be somewhat sodden together, and then take it of  
agayne, & put it into a litle rounde linnen bagge  
made for the purpose, the whiche with these  
hearbes in it, ye shall conuey into the secretes.

Item, take Camomel and Lyne, of eche lyke  
much

muche.iiii.handfulles, bray them together, and  
leethe them with white wine, and then put it in  
a rounde bag of linnen, as before was done, and  
conuay it into the womans priuie partes.

Item, let her drinke for the same purpose, two  
graynes of muske with wine.

Item, take whyte Onions, and couer them  
bnder the hote ashes, the whiche when they be  
well roasted, beate them together with freshe  
Butter vn salted, and make it in maner of a pla-  
ster, and then put it in a linnen bagge, and con-  
uay it into the places, as before: in the meane  
whyle perfumyng the priuie partes with whyte  
Frankencence and Storax.

If it be so that the woman be bered about the  
backe and loynes after her labour, take Camo-  
mell and Mugge wort, of eche two handfulles,  
of Wormewood, Sothernwood, of eche one  
handfull, or Hoherwort three handfulles, of  
Cinamome and Nutmegges beaten small halfe  
an ounce, decoct all these thinges together, and  
in the water of this decoction beyng warme,  
dyp a sponge or other linnen clothes, fomen-  
tyng, sokyng, and strekyng the backe with the  
same, and so do oftentymes, or els put all these  
foresayde herbes together sodden in a bagge, and  
lay it plaster wyse to the backe.

If this profite not, take oyle Rardine, oyle of  
whyte Lillies, of eche an ounce and an halfe, to  
the whiche put a dram of Nutmegges beaten to  
small pouder, with this armoynnt the backe.

Item, take oyle of Anete, oyle of Camomell,  
of

of eche an ounce, Oyle of whyte Lillies two ounces, of ware two drams, disolue all these together ouer the fyre, and therewith annoynt the backe.

What remedies whē the flowres issue more abundantlye then nedeth.

But yf after the labour the flowres issue more vehemently, and in greater aboundaunce then they shoulde, to the great esseoblyshing of the Woman, and inducing of much langour and paynesfulnes, then fyrst shal ye note wherevpon it commeth: for the cause knowen, the disease may the more redyly be cured, and causes of it be diuers, but mooste especiall those that folowe, that is to say: Of much aboundaunt superfluous blood contayned in the whole body, or of much conuixtion of the colericke humour and the blood together, by the whiche the blood is en-fired and chaufed, and so distendeth, openeth, and setteth abroade the baynes whiche descend to the Matrix.

Also the blood beyng very thyn and Waterish, for so it penetrateth, chylleth, and issueth forth the sooner. Also yf the baynes be very large, and receiue much blood,



blood, for in that case they sende forth  
the more agayne. And yf the Matric be  
vnmightie and Weakened, the baynes  
lyke wyle are Weake and large, so that  
they can not retayne nor Withhold the  
blood.

Also if the body of the Woman, or the  
outwarde partes be very dence, close, &  
compact together, so that the outward  
pores be contract and shutte, in suche  
wyle that no vapours or swet can issue  
out at them, then this shall cause the yll  
humours (whiche otherwyle woulde  
passe through the pores in swet) to re-  
mayne within the bodye, and there to  
engender and encrease great fluxe and  
aboundaunce of matter, whiche procee-  
deth with the flowres, and augmenteth  
the quantitie of them.

Also yf the baynes of the Matric be  
(by some chaunce) open and flow forth,  
as yf the Matric be perished or other-  
wyle viciate: Or yf it chaunce that  
the Woman haue hadde a fall, or hath  
beenthruste, or beaten, by all and any  
of

of this meanes may come this inordi-  
nate fluxe of flowres.

Good coun-  
sell to the  
woman.

Nowe seying then that it ensueth by  
so manyfoldz occasions and causes, it  
shalbe mete that women in this case be  
nothing ashamed ne abashed to disclose  
their minde vnto expert Physicians, shew-  
ing them euery thyng in it, as they  
knowe wherevpon it shoulde come, so  
that the Physician vnderstandyng the  
Womans mynde, may the sooner by his  
learnynge and experience consyder the  
true cause of it, and the very remedye  
to amende it. And many thinges there  
be which ceasse and restrayne this over-  
much flowyng of flowres, both Electu-  
aries, Confections, Trochiskes, Pou-  
ders, Clysters, Ooures, Suffumiga-  
tions, Bathes, Plasters, and Dynt-  
mentes, of whiche for the loue of wo-  
men I wyl here set forth the most prin-  
cipall and best.

fyrst then to stinte and restrayne the outra-  
gious fluxe of flowres, it shalbe very good to  
binde the armes strayght and strongly, and not  
the feete or handes, as some vniuersite men do  
teache

teache, and then to sette a ventose bore, or cup-  
pyng glasse with fyre (which is called boryng)  
vnder the breastes, without any scarification,  
laying also linnen clothes dypped in vineger  
on the belly betweene the Nauyll and the secre-  
tes, conueying also into the places suche thynges  
whiche haue vertue to restrayne blood, as the  
flowre and rynde of Pomegranate, Ambre, Terra  
Sigillata, Bole Armentacke, Sanguis Draconis,  
Hematites, the red Rose, whyte frankencense, &  
galles, all those things, or as many of them as ye  
can conueniently get, beate them to powder in  
lyke portion, and temper them with redde wine,  
makyng of it a plaster, the whiche so tempered,  
put into a lytle rounde bagge, the quantitie of a  
mans thumbe, the whiche she shall put into the  
priuie partes.

¶ Item another plaster, to be mixed lykewyse.

Take of the blood stone called Emathites, Bole  
Armentack, of ech halfe an ounce, Sanguis draco-  
nis, Licium, of eche two drams, Karabe, other wise  
named Ambre, the cuppes of Acones, Cipres  
tree Nuttes, flowres of Pomegranade, of eche  
one dram, of the scales of Iron one dramme and  
a halfe, Turpentine and Pitche lyke quantitie,  
or so muche as shalbe sufficient to make a softe  
and somewhat liquid plaster, beate and braye  
all these together, temperyng it to a plaster, and  
then do with it, as ye dyd with the other before.

¶ An oyntment for the same purpose.

¶ Take oyle Martine, oyle of Roses, of eche  
foure ounces, Karabe, the scrappyng of Iuery, the  
Ri
scrappyng

## The second booke.

Scraping of a goates home, redde Corall, Terra sigillata, whyte frankencense, of eche (beyng well and fynely beaten) two dramms, of whyte ware two ounces: all those tempered together, make them in an oyntment, and therewith annoynte the wombe and the secretes.

¶ A bath concernyng the same.

Take Wormewood, Plantane the more and the lesse, the toppes of Vines, freshe braunches of wylde Hulberies, or of the bramble, vnyrpe Damassons, Sloes, or Bolasse, wylde Beares, Medlers or Whispylles, of eche three handfulls, of red rose leaues two handfulls, of Basies, of all sortes of Thyslles, of eche two handfulls, of Cinckfoyle the leaues and rootes, Tormentyll the rootes, Colubyne, of eche an handfull: Also of Acorne cuppes a sawcer full, of Gaules, of Acornes pyllled, of Bursa pastoris, of eche two handfulls, beate all these to powder, cutting and brusyng that that will not be beaten to powder, and seeche them together in rayne water, or els in water in the which ten or twelue burnt flynt stones haue ben quenched. This done, let the woman bath her selfe in this water by to the Naryll, and when she commeth forth of the bath, geue her to drynke two drammes of Electuarium Athanasie, or Miclete, with Plantane water, or yf she be soze thirskie, with red wyne.

And lykewyle ye maye geue to her of these electuaries that folowe. Take good olde roole Suger two ounces, of red Corall, burnt Iuery, Bole Armeniacke, of eche two dramms, of Hema-  
tites

tites three drammes: beate all these thynges together, temperyng it with the roose Sugar, and let her receaue of it in the Mornyng and Euenyng, at eche time one dramme, with. vi. spoonefulles of Plantane water, or els the water of Bursa pastoris.

Item, take of the stone Emathites, and rub it on a Barbers whetstone, called a hone, tyll the hone seeme red, then washe it agayne from the hone with Plantane water, and so do oftentimes, buttill thou haue a good quantitie of it, and euery Mornyng let the woman drynke. iiii. or. v. spoonefulles of the same water.

Furthermore, there be at the Apothecaries Trochiskes, whiche helpe greatly in this case, as the Trochiskes of Carabe, or Ambre, and the Trochiskes of Bole armeniacke, whiche must be ministred a dramme or more of eyther of them, with. iiii. or. v. spoonefulles of Plantane water.

Who that requireth farther in this matter, let them aske counsaile of the Physitions.

Nowe yf it be so that there be engendred any Apostume or other disease in the priuie places after her labour, then muste the Apostumes and diseases be cleansed, purged, and healed, the payne & ache of it mitigated & swaged with the iuyce of the berryes or leaues of Nightshade,

The second booke.

shade, and the iuyce of Plantane, also the oyle of Roses, so that all those thynges be tempered together and the places annoynted therewith.

Item other wyse. Take the white of an egge, womans mylke, the iuyce of Burflane, and temper al these together, and conuey it to the diseased place.

These medicines do refrigerate & coole the vehement heate wont to be in Apostumes. As for the rest, howe to open, drie, and cleanse such Apostumations, ye must consult with some Phisition or expert Surgian.

Many tymes also it chaunceth that the fundement gutte commeth forth both in man and woman, and specially in women in this busines, by reason of theyr great labour and stryuyng with them selfe: wherfore in this case it is the Mydwifes parte, with her hande warmed and wet in whyte wyne, to reduce it backe into his place agayne, the which yf she can not by this meanes, for because peraduenture it be swollē, then  
let

let her dissolue butter in Whyte Wyne warmed, and therein dip Woll, with the which Wrappe the same gutte a Whyle, so doying often tymes tyll it be swaged, that it may be returned in agayne. And ye may vse in the steade of Whyte Wine, luke Warme milke.

And when it is thus returned and reduced into his place: Take ware, and melt it together with Masticke or whyte Frankencense: then spreade it vpon linnen plaster wyse, and laye it ouer the place where it came forth, byndyng it to with a linnen cloth or roller, for partying of. And let this be done thus so often as he goeth to stoole, after that he hath done, vntyll such tyme that it be so settled within, that it come no moze out.

And yf ye wyll not occupie ware, then dyppe woll in the oyle of Masticke, or of Syyke Hardy, and laye it vnto the place ouer the fundement, byndyng it fast vpon the place, as before.

Item another way. Washe and soke the gut with the water in whiche is decocte and sodden such thynges which ericate, drye, and constryne or combynde: as Galles, Cipres nuttes, flowres of Pomegranade, Ambre, Masticke, Frankencense, Sanguis draconis: and when it is wel washed and sohed with this water, then take the powder of an Hartes home burnt, and strue it rounde about the gutte, and so restore it agayne  
 P iii into

into his place. Agayne, sometyne it commeth to passe, that after the womans labour the Matric is remoued out of his place, and appeareth foorth: Then let it be washed and soked with the water in whiche be sodden these thynges folowynge.

Take of Cipres nuts, Spyke narde, Balauftium, Acorne cuppes, of eche an ounce, of Mespylles, and vnyrpe wyld Peares, and vnyrpe Apples, Plummes, and Damsons or Bollasse, of eche a handefull. And suche of those as be to be powdered, beate them to powder, and the rest diuide and cut them small, then seeth them all together in rayne water, or els in water in the whiche steele beyng redde hotte, hath ben oftentymes quenched, and in the same water let the partie bathe her by to the Hauyll: or els dyppe a sponge or a Locke of woll in it, and therewith washe and soke the same Matric oftentymes. Then euer with a fayre cleane linnen cloth wypp it cleane agayne, and strewe vpon it the powder folowynge, beaten very small, and searsed through sylke.

Take of Frankencense, Carabe, Galles, Balauftium, Cipres nuttes, Alome, Antimoni, Vole Armentache, Masticke, of eche lyke muche, beate all these to berye fyne powder, and strewe the Matric with it, then tenderly reduce it into his place agayne with warme linnen clothes, byndynge it  
 up.



by. But yf so be that the Matrix be swollen, so that by this meanes it wyll not be restored to his naturall place agayne, then dissolue butter in white wine, as ye dyd before, and with the same soke it, vnto such tyme as it be swaged, and then reduce it.

Agayne, sometyme it chaunceth that the womans Nauyll through labour is dissolved, so that it openeth it selfe; then make a small tent of fine linnen, and annoynt it with this oyntment that followeth, & the same put into the Nauyll.

*Remedies for the womans nauil, when it openeth it selfe for payne in the labour.*

Take whyte frankencense, and beate it to powder, and then temper it with the whyte of an egge, so that it be after the maner of liquid honye, with this annoynt the Nauyll within and without, annoynting also the tente, the which being put in the hole of the Nauyll, binde some cloth ouer it to kepe it in his place.

Item, many tymes it chaunceth that thozow the great difficultie & thzonges of labour, the priute part and the fundament become one, by reason of rupture and breakyng of the same parte in the delyueraunce of the chylde, and that by that meanes the Matrix descendeth and issueth downe, the whiche thyng chaunceth sometymes, by reason that

*Howe that sometime the priute part & fundament become one,*

*Rijij*

*the*

The second Booke.

the same place is very narrowe, and also tender, and the byrth bygge & of great growth, so that it proceedeth With such violence, that it breaketh the way before it.

When this mishappe falleth, fyrste washe and soke the Matrix, and also reduce it to his place agayne, after the maner as I tolde you here immediatly before: then heale this bracke & wounde by sowyng of both sydes of it together agayne With a sylken threede, as Chirurgions do other woundes, and if that lyke ye not, then may ye cure it otherwyse Without sowyng, thus.

Take two lyttle peeces of linnen cloth, eche of the length of the wounde, and in breadth two fyngers broade, spreade the lytle clothes with some fast cleauyng plaster, the which wyll cause the cloutes to stycke fast where they shalbe set: then fasten them, the one on the one syde of the rift, the other on the other syde, so that nothyng appeare betweene the peeces of linnen in the myddes of them, but only the clyfte and ryfte of the wounde in the breadth of a strawe. Then (this done) sowe the sydes of the linnen together close, as before I byd you to sowe the skyn, and when they be thus styched together, lay a lytle

lytle liquid pitche or tarre bp on the seame. And this done, the lappes and sydes of the wounde vnder the linnen plaster wyll growe together agayne and heale, and then may ye remouue your plasters.

¶ Item another way.

Take Camfely dyed, and beate it to powder, also a lytle quantitie of Cinamome beaten to powder, soyne them together, and strow of this powder into the wounde, and without fault it shall heale.

¶ Of abozgements, or vntymely byrthes, and the causes of it, and by what remedies it may be defended, holpen and eased.

Cap. vii.



**A**Bozement, or vntymelye birth, is when the woman is deliuered before due season, and before the fruite be ripe (as in the.iii. iiii. or v.moneth) before the byrth haue lyfe: and sometymes after it hath lyfe it is delyuered before it stirre, being by some chaunce dead in the mothers wombe. Of the whiche thynges there be many and diuers causes.

Many causes of vntymely byrthes.

First, sometymes the mouth of the Matric

Matrix is so large and ample, that it can not conueniently close it selfe together, neither containe the feature or conception: Or els it may be so corrupted & infected With viscos, slymye, fleumatycke, and other Wateryshe humours, that the cavitie or holownesse thereof is thereby made so slypperye, that the feature conceaued can not there remaine, but slyppeth and slydeth foorth agayne. Also sometymes the Matrix is apostumated and soze, so that for payne it can not contayne the conception.

Item, sometymes the Cotildons, that is the baynes by the Which the conception and feature is tyed and fastened in the Matrix (thorowe the Which also the feature receaueth nourishment and foode, as is declared in the fyrst booke) be stopped With viscos & yll humours, or els swollen by inflasion, so that they breake, by the Whiche meanes, the feature destitute of his wont nourishment, perysheth and dyeth, & that most commonly in the second and thirde moneth after

also yll  
and to  
glouer  
adlyd

after  
the

after conception. wherfore Hipocrates sayth : All such women whiche be impregnate or conceived, being of a meane state in theyr body (that is to say, nether to fatte or grosse, ne to spare or leane) yf it chaunce any suche to aborte in the seconde or thirde moneth (no other evident cause appearyng) knowe ye for certaine, that it ensueth for because the Cotilidons be opplete, stopped and stuffed with yll humours, and be swollen and puffed therewith that they breake: and so consequentye the feature dyeth for fault of foode.

Item, abortement sometyme cometh by reason that some of the places about the Matrix be diseased and greened, as yf *Intestinum rectum*, whiche is called the fundement gut, be vlcerate, hauyng the pylles or Hemorroides: or the visick or bladder be swollen or encūbred with the stone, the strangury, or other euil. In these cases through the great labour & paine the which the partie hath in endeuoring & enforcing her self other  
to

Abortement  
by reason of  
some greese  
about the  
Matrix.

The second booke.

to scoole, or to make water, be engendred great motions downeward, whereby manye tymes the handfastnes of the Cotlidons is broken.

Aborcemēt  
by Tenas-  
mus.

Also aborcement maye come of a disease called Tenasmus, the which is when one hath ever great desyre and luste to the scoole, and yet can do nothyng, nevertheless the parties greatlye do enforce and payne them selfe to it. And as Hipocrates saith, the pregnaunt woman which hath Tenasmus, for the most parte abhorceth, that is to say, bringeth forth her chyld out of tyme.

Aborcemēt  
through the  
cough.

Item the cough, if it be greenous, causeth the same. And as the forenamed excellent Philition sayth, suche as are very spare and leane, and brought low, evermore lyghtly do aborce, for because that all the meate and foode the whiche they receave, turneth to foode, nourishment, and restauration of theyr owne bodyes, and so is the conception destitute of foode, wherefore necessarye it dyeth.

Item

Item, this chaunce also commeth by ouermuch bleedynge at the nose, or other where, or issuing of the flowres immoderately. And so sayth Hypocrates, yf the woman yeeld flowres after her conception, it can not be that the feature do long proue, the whiche saying must be vnderstande, yf they flowe vehemently, or that the partie be weake and verye spare, or yf it be after the thyrde moneth, for it may be well, that in the fyrst and seconde moneth flowres may issue, and yet no daunger. For as yet lytle foode and noyrishment satisfieth the conception for the smalenesse thereof.

Item, to be let blood may be the cause of abozement, whiche must be vnderstande, in suche as haue but lytle store of blood: but such as haue great copie and plentie of blood, may without any peryll (if any vrgent cause require it) be let blood, so that it be after the fourth moneth, and before the seuenth. Howbeit, I would that none should be let blood, except some great and wayghtie cause

dyd

dyd require it.

Item, it may come by taking of some strong purgation befoze the fourth moneth, and after the seventh moneth.

And yf it be so that any necessitie do so require that she must needes receave a purgation, let it be done betweene the fourth and the seventh moneth after the conception, for then may it be with least peryll. And see that the purgation be very gentle and easie.

Also this may come by reason of a continuall fluxe, be it blooddye or otherwise, and speciallye yf the woman be weake & spare, for by that meanes the conception is greatly weakened and peryshed. Also ouermuch vometyng may be cause of abozcement, for by ouermuch galpyng and reachyng vpwardes, the Cotilidons may be broken, and so the feature to peryshe.

Item, ouermuch famine or hunger and also sharpe and feruent sycknesse may be the cause thereof, as the pestilence, apostume in the brest, and sodayne pallsie,



The second booke. Fol. lxxxv.

palsye, the falling sycknesse. &c. Also  
ouermuch drunkennes, and excesse fee-  
dyng and surfettyng, by the whiche the  
byrth is suffocate and strangled in the  
belly, and the foode corrupt for lacke of  
due digestion.

Item, if the birch be sicke by any out-  
warde or inwarde cause, or yf the Se-  
condine in the which the feature is con-  
teyned, do breake before his tyme, and  
the humours and waters of the same  
flow & issue forth, causing the place to be  
slippy, and so the birch to slide away  
vntimely: Or yf the mother haue taken  
very great cold, or ouer great heat, whi-  
che weakeneth both mother and chylde.

And therefore ought women with  
chylde to excheue much bathing or go-  
ing to the hot houses in theyr teemyng,  
for that may do hurt thre wayes.

Fyrste, that it kyndleth or enflameth  
the ayre or breath conteyned in the bo-  
dy, and so styfleth the chylde, and some-  
tyme the mother to.

Secondly, that it relaxeth, dissolueth, &  
looseth

The second booke.

looseth the Cotlidons, and so maketh the byrth to issue foorth. Thirdly, that the bitter heate of the bath, encrease the inwarde heate of the body: In so much, that the byrth not beyng able to sustayne and abyde the heate, naturally proceedeth for refrigeration and cooling: but in the tyme or about the tyme of labour, she may vse bathes, as I declared before, for the redyer and more expedite delyueraunce.

Cause of a  
bozement  
by mutati-  
on of the  
weather.

Item, the intemperancie and mutation of the ayre and Weather, may be cause of abozement. For (as Hypocrates Writeth) Whensoever the Wynter is hot and moyste, and the spryng tyde after colde & drye, such women in that spryng tyde may soone & of a lyght cause haue abozement: Or yf they abozce not, yet they shalbe deliuered with great payne, and the birth shalbe very weake & sicklye, so that it shall dye strayght, or yf it dye not by and by, it shal proue but very slenderly. The cause of the which thing is this.

For when that suche Wynteryng chaunceth, the hoate and moyste weather heateth & moysteth the womans body, & by that the bodye is opened, vnloosed, & resolued, no lesse then though she were euery day bathed, and bypon this when the spring time commeth, yf it be colde and drye, findyng the body open and vnloosed after suche sorte, the colde entereth and pearceth the bodye the sooner & the moze vehemently: and the byrth feeling the sodayne colde and chaunge of weather, pineth away, and dieth in the Mothers belly, or anone after it is deliuered: or yf it lyue, it lyketh not, nor proueth not, and great payne shall it be to kepe life in it.

Item, aborcement may happen by ouer muche styring of the body in labouryng, daunsyng, or leaping, or by some fall or thrust agaynst some wall, or beatyng, or by some sodain anger, feare, dread, sorowe, or some sodayne and vnlookedfor ioy. Thus haue I rehearsed all the causes of the whiche mozte com-

Di monly

## The seconde booke.

monly maye ensue abozcement oz br-  
tymely byrth, the whiche no doubtte is  
much more grieffe and payne to the wo-  
man, then the very naturall labour, for  
such thinges as chaunce to man oz wo-  
man contrarype to nature, oz before na-  
ture doeth require it, is farre greater  
greefe, then the same happenyng and  
comming in his due season.

¶ Signes whereby ye may fozesee abozcement.

Tokens to  
fozesee a  
bozement.



When the woman shall labour  
before her tyme, these signes  
are wont to go before. First  
her brests which before were  
hole, sounde, & full, shall begin to ware  
lesse, to fall, and to flagge, and then euer  
for the most part abozcement foloweth.  
But if it be so that she go with two chil-  
dren at once, if one of the brestes swage,  
whiche before was in good lyking, the  
other remaynyng sounde and safe, then  
loke of what side the brest is of, and the  
chylde of that syde is in perill. where-  
fore Hipocrates wryteth, yf the ryght  
brest flake oz flagge, the masculine oz  
male

male byrth is in perill: yf the left, the female byrth, because that for the moſte part when there be two at once, the one is masculine, and the other feminine: the man lyeth in the ryght ſyde, and the woman in the left moſt commonly.

Alſo another ſigne of aborcement is, when the woman hath great paynes and dolours of the Matrix, & that ſhe begyn to waxe red in the face, and all partes of the bodye to ſhake & tremble, as though it were in a feuer, or the palſey in the head. Item when ſhe feeleth great ache in the inner part of the eyes toward the braines, the reſt of the body taken as it were with a Werynes without any outward apparant cauſe, why theſe thinges portende and ſignifie aborcement to be at hande, ſpecially yf at the ſame time the ſlowres iſſue alſo.

Item, yf the womans body do ſwell and inflate with a certayne hardenelle or ſtyfenelle, and that ſhe feele ſitches, and as it were ventoliſtie or wynde, runnyng from one ſyde of the bodye

to the other, and yet the belly not withstanding, beyng nothyng the more ponderous or wayghtie, and that the same inflation do persist and continue a nye Whyle, the Woman taking and eatinge suche thinges Whiche haue vertue to discusse and banquishe ventositie and Wyndynesse: this thyng I saye doeth betoken perill of aborcement through ventositie and inflation, and that chiefly about the thirde or fourth moneth after the concepti-  
on.

Thus haue I sufficiently declared euident and sufficient signes, Whereby may be prouided and foreseene the aborcement before it come. Nowe Wyl I shew you the remedies Wherby it may be auerted and let.

The cheefe remedie to auoide aborcement is, to shun all such thinges Which may be cause of it, the Whiche I haue competently entreated of already: but yf ye feare aborcement, because that the mouth of the matrix be ouer ample and  
large,

Remedies  
wherby to  
aoyde a-  
borcement.

large, then must ye vse suche thynges whose operation is to contrabe, constrain, and bring together, as Bathes, Fumigations, Oyntmentes, Plasters, Oodours, and suche lyke, of the whiche I haue spoken before, and such thinges the which repressle and stynte the flow-ers flowyng ouer muche after the byrth.

Agayne, yf ye feare this peryll, because the mouth of the Matrix is moyst and slipperie, other because that the cotilidons be replete and fulfilled with viscos humours, and with inflations or ventosities: then may ye defende it by vsing of suche thinges whose qualities be to purifie, clense, exicate, or drye, and to repressle ventosities, whereof also we haue made mention here before.

Howbeit, in all this matter, let not to make some expert Phisition of your counsaile, yf ye may haue such one, for because that many suche thinges come, and not all by one way or meane.

And yf ye doubtte peryll for because

that the Matrix or other places about  
 be infected, exulcerated, or apostumate,  
 or hauyng the stone or strangury, and  
 suche other thynges: then aske and vse  
 the aduise of some well learned medi-  
 cine, and he shall shewe you howe all  
 thynges shalbe recured.

If agayne ye feare aborcement be-  
 cause the partie is very weake and low  
 brought, then let her feede on such thin-  
 ges the whiche moysten and noury she  
 wel, or fatten y<sup>e</sup> body, as Capons flethe,  
 Kid, Lamme, young Cleale, Partridge,  
 and such other.

Agayne, yf the woman be taken with  
 any sharpe and fell disease, then let her  
 be cured of the same as shortly as can  
 be, with such thinges the which apper-  
 tayne to the curyng of such disease: or yf  
 she haue susteyned any long famine or  
 hunger, then let her be fedde with good  
 meates and drynkes moderately taken:  
 and yf she haue surfetted by ouermuch  
 eatyng and drynkyng ( as nowe a-  
 dayes most commonly people do ) then  
 let



tyme and in one person, the surer may ye be that the birth is dead, the whiche beyng once dead, all diligence muste be hadde that it may be expelled out of the womans body.

But here must ye see agayne whether it may be expelled, the Mothers lyfe saued or no: for sometime it chaunceth that the Mother dyeth withall, and sometimes the Mother doth well and prospereth.

Whether the Mother shalbe in perill withall, or no, by these thinges shall ye knowe. If the woman beyng in the labour sowne or feare, as though she were in a traunce: if her remembraunce fayle her, and she waxe feeble and scant able to moue or stirre her selfe: yf she (called with a loude voyce) can answer nothyng at all, or els verye litle, and that very softly, as though her voyce began to fayle her: if she be invaded or taken among in the labouryng with convulsion or shrinkelyng together: if she refuse or cannot broke meate:

yf

To knowe  
whether the  
mother shal  
be in perill  
or no.

## The seconde booke.

yf her pulces beate very fast, the which signes when ye see in y<sup>e</sup> woman labouryng, it is an evident token that she shall not lyue long after her deliuerance, wherfore commit the cure of her to the handes of almyghtie God: but yf none of these signes do appeare, then haue good hope, for the woman shall do wel, the byrth beyng once departed: wherfore geue all diligence to the expulsion of it, that the woman maye be deliuered of this dead burthen, the whiche thyng maye be done by two wayes, eyther by medicines expulsive, or els by certayne instrumentes made for the nonce.

Two meanes to expel dead birthes

fyyste without instrumentes, with this fumigation. Take eyther the houe or dongue of an Ass, and put it on coles, and let the woman receave the fume vnderneath.

### ¶ Another.

Take the skinne of an Adder, Myrre, Castoriū, Brymstone, Galbanum, Oppoponacum, Madder that the Diers occupie, Pigeōs donge, or Hawkes donge, beate al these to powder, & temper the with Dre gal, & make pylls of it, eche the quantitie of a fylberde nutte, and then put one after another

another in the coales, and receaue the fume thoro<sup>w</sup>e a pipe or conduite made for that purpose into the priuities.

Another. Take Encense, Oppoponacum, Galbanum, Brimstone, of eche lyke muche, beate them together, and temper them with Dre gall, and make pilles of them, and then of the same make fumigations, as before.

A potion for the same purpose. Take Asa fetida, halfe a dram, of Rue three drams, of Myrre two drams, and beate them to powder, and geue to the woman at eche tyme a dram of this powder with white wine, or with water in the whiche Sauiue is sodden.

Another. Take figges, fenegreke, Organnie, and see the them in water, the whiche geue vnto the woman to drinke: for this drynke wyll engender lubricitie and slippernes in the neather partes, and vse also some of those thinges which haue bertue to prouoke the byrth, whereof we entreated before.

Item, certayne pessaries or suppositaries concerning the same. Take Gumme, Ammoniack, Oppoponacum, Heliborus niger, Staphisager, Aristolochia longa, and Colocinthis without his kernels, beate all these thinges together, tempering them with Dre gall, and also with the iuice of fresh Rue, then make a pessarie of wollen, and annoynt and wete the pessarie with the same, conuaying it into the secrete places.

Item another. Make a pessarie of wollen, of the length and thicke<sup>n</sup>esse of a finger, and dippe  
it

## The seconde booke.

it in the iuyce of Rue in the whiche is dissolved a quantitie of Scammonie, and do with that pessarie, as before.

Item, take Aristolochia rotunda, Sauiue, garden Cresses, of eche lyke muche, beate them to powder, and temper them with Dre gall, with this annoynt a pessarie made and ordered as before is spoken of.

Item, yf the woman drynke the mylke of another woman, it wyll styre and expell the byrth.

Item, take of the iuyce of Dittayne, or of the powder of the roote of the same hearbe two drams, and geue the same to drynke to the woman with wine, except she be in great heate, for then shall ye geue it her with luke warme water, and this shall expell the dead byrth without anye peryll of the Mother.

Item, take of Myrthe foure drammes, of Cinamome, Galbanum, Castorium, of eche two drams, of Oppopocacum, one dramme, all those beaten & tempered together with Dre gal, make pilles of them, waying eche of them a dramme, and with the fume of those, perfume the neather partes, by this vapour the dead birth is brought forth, inflation and suffocation of blood is expelled.

Item, take of water Minte, Sothernwood, Mugwurt, of eche a handfull, of Asphaltum halfe an ounce, of Madder, two ounces and an halfe, of Camomell, Horehounde, Fenegreke, of eche two ounces, seethe all these thinges together in  
rain

raine water, in the whiche let the woman bathe her selfe: then take of Hennes greace and Duches greace, of eche foure drammes, to the whiche ad two ounces of oyle of Byll seede, with this oymment annoynt the womans head conuynng out of the bathe, then take Date stones, and beate them to powder a dramme and an halfe, with a scruple of Saffron tempered together with white wine, the whiche let her immediately drinke after she come forth of the bathe.

Item, take Oppoponacum, and make thereof a pessarye the quantitie of a synger, conuaye it into the priuities, this expelleth the deadde byrth.

Item, take of Galbanum a dram or somewhat lesse, of Goates mylke an ounce and a halfe, or two ounces, in the whiche the Galbanum being dissolved, geue it to the woman to drynke.

Item, a plaster for the same. Take Galbanum, beaten and tempered with the iuyce of Mother-wurt, and of this make a plaster by putting to of ware a certayne quantitie: then take a linnen cloth of suche length and breadth that it may couer all the belly vnder the Nauell to the priuities, from one syde to the other, on this clothe spreade this plaster of the thiknesse of a strawe, and lay it to the belly.

Item, take the Triacle whiche is called Diacteslarum, & geue of it to the woman for to drynke, and it wyll expell the dead byrth.

But yf all these medicines profite not, then  
must

## The seconde booke.

musse be bled more seuerer and harde remedies  
with instrumentes, as hokes, tongues, and such  
other thynges made for the nonce. And fyrst  
the woman musse be layde a long byrtyght, the  
middle part of her bodye lying hier then all the  
rest, companyed of women assisting her about,  
to comfort her, and to kepe her downe, that  
when the byrth is plucked out, she ryse not with-  
all. Then let the Midwyfe annoynt her lefte  
hande with the oyle of whyte Lillies, or other  
that maye make it soople and smothe, and hol-  
ding out her fingers shutting together her hand,  
let her put it into the Matrix to feele and per-  
ceauue after what fashion the dead byrth lyeth in  
the Mothers wombe, so that she may the better  
put in hokes, and suche other instrumentes to  
plucke it out withall.

Yf so be that it lye the head forwarde, then  
fasten a hooke eyther vppon one of the eyes of  
it, or the roose of the mouth, or vnder the chin,  
or on one of the shoulders, which of these partes  
shall seeme moste commodious and handsome  
to take it out by, and the hooke fastened, to  
draue it out very tenderlye for hurtyng of the  
woman.

But yf it lye the feete forwarde, then fasten  
the hooke on the bone aboute the priuie partes,  
or by some rybbe, or some of the backe bones, or  
of the brest bones: and when this hooke is thus  
fastened, the Midwyfe may not by and by draue  
and plucke at it, but holdyng it in her lefte  
hande

hande, let her with her ryght hande fasten another in some other parte of the byrth, ryght agaynst the fyrst, and then tenderly let her drawe both together, so that the byrth may proceede and come foorth on both sydes equally, mouyng it from one syde to another, tyll ye haue gotten out altogether, and nowe and then to helpe it in the commyng foorth with the foresynger well annoynted, yf it chaunce to stycke, or to be lette any where: and as it commeth foorth, alwaye to remoue the hookes farther and farther on the dead byrth.

Agayne, yf it chaunce that one of the handes onely of the byrth do appeare, and that it can not conueniently be reduced and returned bywarde agayne, by reason of the narrowesse of the place, then bynde it with a linnen cloth that it styp not by agayne, and then to plucke it outwarde vntyll such tyme that the whole arme be out, and then with a sharpe knyfe cutte it of from the body, and euen so do yf both handes appeare fyrst at once, or one legge, or both, yf they can not be returned backe to be otherwyse taken out conuenientlye. As ye cutte the armes from the shoulders, so lykewyse cuttyng the legges from the thyghes, for the whiche purpose the Chyrurgions haue meete instrumentes made for the nonce, with the which suche legges and armes may soone be cut fro the body. These partes beyng once resecte and cutte from the bodye, then turne the rest, so that it maye easlye proceede with as lytle payne to the mother as

Di

maye

may be.

If it be so that the chyldes head be so swollen by inflation, swelling, or resort of humours, that it wyll not conueniently issue out at that narrow places: Then let the Midwyfe with a sharpe penknife cutte open the head, that the humours conteyned in it may issue and runne forth, and so the head to waxe lesse, able to be plucked out: But yf it be so, that not by anye suche casualtie the head be bygge, but onlye of a naturall growth, then muste the head be broken in peeces, and the partes euermore taken forth with suche instrumentes as the Chirurgions haue redy and necessarie for suche purposes.

Agayne, yf that after the head were come forth, yet the brest part woulde not folowe for greatnesse: Then must ye breake and cut lykewyse that part, vnto suche tyme that it may be had forth. And euen so lykewyse yf all the reste of the body shoulde be so swollen that it woulde not proceede ne come forth: then muste it lykewyse be broken in peeces, and so had forth.

Farthermore, yf by chaunce or disease it come to passe, that the mouth of the Matrix be erulcerate or appostumate, so that the passage be made the narrower by that meanes, the dryer, and the more contract: then must ye fyrst studeye and endeuour you to soople and ease the places by oyles and other greaces, suche as I spake of sufficiently before in the fourth Chapter, with bathes and fumigations.



Also yf the dead byrth come sydelong, then must ye do what maye be done to conuerte and turne it to suche fashon, that it maye mosse easlye be brought forth. The Matrix and other secretz must be annoynted, perfumed, and vapoured with such thinges the which may make it more aniple and large. If it can not be thus had forth whole, then let it be cutte out by peece meale, as is before spoken of. And yf after this delyueraunce the flowres issue ouer vehemently, then vse suche thinges as haue vertue to restrayne them, of the whiche I haue spoken in the. vi. Chapter before.

But contrarve to all this, yf it chaunce that the woman in her labour dye, and the chylde hauyng lyfe in it: then shall it be meete to kepe open the womans mouth, and also the neather places, so that the chylde may by that meanes both receaue and also expell ayre and breath, whiche otherwyse myght be stopped, to the destruction of the chylde. And then to turne her on the lefte syde, and there to cut her open, and so take out the chylde. They that be borne after this fashon are called Cesars, for because they be cutte out of theyr mothers

belly: whereupon also the noble

Romayne Cesar the fyrste  
toke his name.

¶ **C**

## The second booke.

**I**n the last Chapter of this booke be breefly recited certayne expert medicines, whiche be most requisite to the cheefe purpose intended in this present booke. Cap. r.

**A**somuche as the principall intent and ende of this booke is, to shewe the meanes and medicines whereby the womans labour may be made the more easie: therefore here I wyll compendiously set foorth certayne medicines, oyntmentes, and emplasters, suche as shalbe sufficient and mosse requisite to that purpose, and suche agayne as hath ben well experimented and practised: The whiche also it shalbe convenient (for them that may) alwayes to haue in a redynesse agaynst theyr tyme of neede. For although that nature be the cheefe and head doer in all this busynesse, (as in conception, bearyng, and the byrth:) yet notwithstanding, medicines many tymes do helpe, ayde, and fortifie nature, beyng sometyme impedit and lette, yea, impotent and not able to do her office as shoulde appertayne.

When the tyme then of the womans labour is come, yf the labour long and paynefully, and yet the byrth do not proceede: then for the more expedite and quicke deliuerance, geue her of this medicine folowng.

**T**ake of the fynest Cinamome that may be chosen

chosen.iiii. drammes, and with a sharpe knyfe  
fyrst thred it in very small peeces, and then beate  
it to very fyne powder.

Item of Saffron dryed by the fyre tyll it be blacke,  
kyshe, of Cassia lignea, fyne Reubarde, Sauiue  
dryed, Myrre, of eche of these seuen scruples, of  
pure Muske. xvi. graynes, euery of these simples  
exquisitely by them selues powdred, and then  
perfectly myxed in one, with .vi. or .vii. droppes  
of Maluesey, temper the whole masse into lyttle  
roundels or trochiskes, eche waying a dramme.  
And in tyme of neede at the womans labour,  
geue her hardly the wayght of, .vi. d. of these tro-  
chiskes beaten into fine powder, with .iiii. spon-  
fulles of Hysope water, and other. .iiii. of good  
wine secke.

This midicine is not onlye profitable at this  
tyme to prouoke the byrth, but also is notablie  
good to expell the after byrth, or anye other suche  
lyke matter in that place, hauyng neede of ex-  
pulsion.

Item, yf neede do so require, it shalbe very  
expedient to haue this emplaster solowynge, in  
a redynesse, the which spread abroade vpon a lyn-  
nen cloth, either els vpon leather, and so applyed  
to the bottome of the bellye in as large maner  
as maye be, dilateth and openeth the pores of  
that partes, amplifieth, enlargeth, and dissolueth  
them, whereby that that is contayned in the bel-  
lye syndeth the freer issue, to the lesse greeuance  
of the mother.

Take of Emplastum de Melliloto, of Diachilon, of  
Oxyroceum,

Oxyroceum, of eche two ounces, of the rootes of Asarum, of wyld Pepper dried, the leaues of Benioim, of tosted Cummin, of eche two dragmes, of good Castorium, iiii. dragmes, of the oyle of Wyll one or two spoonefulles: such of these as are to be powdred, beate them fyne, and then ouer a soft fyze temper them altogether perfectly.

Item, the same emplaster may serue to be layde ouer all the bottome of the bellye and the priuite passage, to prouoke and drawe foorth the latter or hynder byrth yf neede be: But yf that be not strong enough, then lay to this plaster following, whiche is of muche more efficacie, force, and strength.

Take of Galbanum, Ammoniacum, Serapinum, Myrthe, of eche an ounce, of Colloquintida, Heleborus niger, of eche two drams, of Castorium, Perethrum, and Storax liquida, of eche three drammes, of Turpentine and Petroleum, of eche foure drammes. fyrt ouer a soft fyze temper the Turpentine, Petroleum, and Storax liquida, together, then thereto adde Colloquintida, Heleborus, Castorium and Perethrum, beyng fyrt well and finely beaten to powder: after put to the Galbanum, Ammoniacum, Serapinum and Myrthe, beyng fyrt dissolved in good Maluesey, and so take it from the fyze, and labour it with your handes. This plaster is of great effect to prouoke the after byrth.

Item, vnset Leekes stamped and fryed with butter, and so layed plaster wyse to the belly serueth well for the same.

Item,

Item, the leaues or flowres of Marygoldes drunke with whyte wine, expell the after byrth. Also the sayde leaues and flowres dyled, and at tyme of neede, kyndeled with a waxe candle, and the funne thereof receaued vnderneath into the priuie part, prouoketh out merueylously the after byrth.

¶ Item a comfoztible pocion, to be taken after the deliuerance of the chyld.

Take of the sweetest garden Myntes, greene or dyle, of the leaues of Baume greene also or dyle, of the leaues of Maioram, the rootes of fenell the pyth taken out, the flowres of Buglos, of Rosemarye, of Ruds, of Borage, and of dyled red Rose leaues, of eche of these halfe a handfull, more or lesse as it pleaseth you, of Cloues and Mase brused a lyttle, the wayght of two pence, of Cinamome shredde in small portions the wayght of. vi. grotes, krypt all these together in a cloute or lyttle linnen bagge, and hangge the same bagge in a quart of Borage water the space of a daye and a nyghte: then take out the sayde bagge, and reserue the water, of the whiche take one halfe, and the other halfe of pure wine Secke, or els Muscadell: and beyng myxt together, put thereto a lyttle of the conserue of Barberies, conserue of Borage flowres, conserue of Rosemarie flowres, and drynke hereof euerye day the space of foure or fyue dayes, at once foure spoonefulls of the water, and other foure of the foresayde wyne. And this pocion shall both comfozte the woman, and also helpe

P iiii                      greatly

## The second booke.

greatly to the expulsion of all noysome thynges to be expelled.

And here it is worthy to be noted, that where as it is a common blage to geue often to women in theyr chylde bed caudels of Dtemeale, thynkyng and saying thereby the woman to be scoured, whereas in deede the sayde Dtemeale is a notable bynder and dryer: Therefore ye shall vnderstand, that the ryght vse thereof is, to geue it to suche as haue alreedy ben well and sufficientlye scoured and cleansed from theyr after byrth, and other thynges to be looked for in this tyme and case: but yf the woman be not sufficientlye purged alreedy, then geue her no Dtemeale caudels, ne other thynges that may bynde.

And thus I make an ende, praying the women readers hereof, to accept and suffise them selues with these fewe medicines here in this Chapter mentioned, and often by me and other practised. The which thyng yf they shall do so, it shall (no doubt) be occasion to me the sooner to retake this matter in hande agayne, and to refreshe and furnysh the same with newe and much more excellent experiences then hath ben yet hytherto read or seene in any booke concernyng such matters.

And as touchyng the aboue Trochiskes and emplasters described here in this place, ye shall fynde them alwayes redye made in

Woucklers berie in  
London.

In this first Chapter of the thyzde booke,  
is fyrst declared the matters therein conteyned,  
and then howe the Infant newly bozne  
must be handled, nourished and  
looked to. Cap. i.



In the second booke <sup>what is to</sup>  
we haue sufficient- <sup>be done</sup>  
lye and at length <sup>when the</sup>  
declared the ma- <sup>chylde is</sup>  
ners, fashions, and <sup>bozne.</sup>  
diuersities of byz-  
thes, with the daū-  
gers and perylles  
often chaunling to

the Women at theyr labours, and after  
the same. And nowe here in this thyzde  
booke shalbe entreated what is to be  
done to the infant bozne. And howe to  
chose a Nurse, & of her office: With ma-  
nyfolde medicines, & remedies agaynst  
sundrye infirmities, which eslones hap-  
pen to Infantes in theyr infansie.

Then after that the Infant is once come to  
lyght, by and by the Nauyll muste be cutte three  
fyngers breadth from the belly, and so knytte vp,  
and let be strued on the head of that that remay-  
neth, of the powder of Bole armeniacke, and San-  
guis draconis, Sarcocola, Myrre, and Cummin,  
of eche lyke muche beaten to powder: then vpon  
that

that bynde a peece of woll, dypped in oyle Oliue  
that the powder fall not of. Some vse fyrste to  
knyt the Nauyll, and after to cutte it so much, as  
is before rehearsed.

And farthermore some saye, that of  
What length the reste of the Nauyll is  
left, of the same length shal the chyldes  
tong be, if it be a man child. *Itē* Auicenna  
saith, that diuers things may be know-  
en by markyng of the chyldes Nauyll:  
For (as he sayth) When the woman is  
deliuered of her first chyld, then behold  
the Nauyl of the child: Which yf in that  
part of it which is next vnto the body it  
haue neuer a wrinkle, it p̄tendeth and  
doth signifie perpetuall from thence-  
foorth sterilitie or barrenesse: and yf it  
haue any wryncles in it: then so manye  
wryncles, so many chyldzen shal the wo-  
man haue in time to come. Also some ad  
to this, and say, that if there be litle space  
betwene these wryncles in the nauil, thē  
shal there be also litle space betwene the  
bearyng of the children: if muche, it sig-  
nifieth long tyme betweene the bearing  
of them: but these sayinges be neither in  
the Gospell of the day, ne of the nyght.



Nowe to returne to our purpose, when that the Nauyll is cut of, and the rest knytted by: annoynt all the chyldes bodye with the oyle of A. cornes, for that is singularly good to confyrme, stedfast, and to defende the body from noysome thynges, whiche maye chaunce from without, as smoke, colde, and suche other thynges: whiche yf the Infante be greued withall straight after the birth, beyng yet verie tender, it shoulde hurte it greatly.

After this annoyntyng, washe the Infante with warme water, and with your synger (the nayle beyng pared) open the chyldes nolethrylles, and purge them of the fylthynesse. And also that the Nurse handle so the chyldes syttyng place, that it may be prouoked to purge the bellye. And cheefely it must be defended from ouermuch colde, or ouermuch heate.

After that the parte extant or the knotte of the Nauyll is fallen (the whiche commonlye chaunceth after the thyꝛde or fourth daye) then on the reste remainyng, strew the powder of Althes of a Calles hooft burnt, or of Snayle shelles, or of the powder of lead, called red lead, tempered with wine.

Furthermore, when the Infante is swaddled and layde in Cradell, the Nurse must geue all diligence and heede that she bynde euery part ryght, and in his due place and order, and that with all tenderesse and gentle entreatyng, and not crookedly and confuselye, the whiche also

also must be done oftentimes in the day, for in this is it, as it is in young and tender ympe, plantes and twygges: the whiche, euen as ye bowe them in theyꝛ youth, so wyll they euer moze remayne vnto age. And euen so the Infant, yf it be bounde and swadled, the members lying ryght and strayght, then shall it growe strayght and byryght. If it be crookedly handled, it wyll growe lykewyse. And to the yll negligence of many Nourles, may be imputed the crokednesse and deformatie of many a man and woman, whiche otherwysely myght seeme as well fauoured as any other.

By the only negligence of Nourles many chyldre groweth crokedbacked, & wyperlegged.

Item, let the chyldes eyes be oftentimes wypered and cleansed with a fyne and cleane linnen cloth, or with sylke. And let the armes of the Infant be verie strayght layde downe by the sydes, that they may growe ryght, and sometyme strokyng the belly of the chyldre before the besycke or bladder, to helpe to ease, and to prouoke the chyldre to the makynge of water: and when ye lay it in the Cradell to sleepe, sette the Cradell in suche a place, that neither the beames of the Sunne by day, neyther the Moone by nyght come on the Infant, but rather set it in a darke and shadowy place, laying also the head euer somewhat hyer then the rest of the body.

And farther, let it be washed two or thre tymes in the day, & that anone after sleepe, in the winter with hotte water, in the Sommer with luke warme water: nether let it tary long in the water, but vnto suche tyme as the bodye begyn  
to

to ware red for heate, but take heede that none of the water come into the infantes eares, for that should greatly hurt his hearyng another day.

Then, to be short, when it is taken out of the bath, let it be wyped and dryed with gentle and soft linnen clothes warmed, and then to laye it on her lappe the backe vpwarde, the whiche with her handes let her tenderly stroke and rub, and then to lappe it by, and to swaddell it, and when it is swaddled, to put a droppe or two of water into the nozet hylles of it, is very good for the eye syght. And so to lay it to rest.

**C** Of the Purse and her mylke: and howe long the chylde shoulde sucke. Cap. ii.



**S** concerning the The mothers mylke  
 bynggng by, nourysh-  
 mente, and geuyng of best & most  
 sucke to the chylde, it familer to  
 shalbe beste that the the chylde.  
 mother geue her chylde  
 sucke her selfe, for the  
 mothers milke is more  
 conuenient and agree-  
 able to the Infant,  
 then any other wo-  
 mans, and more doth it nourysh-  
 it, for because  
 that in the mothers belly it was wont to the  
 same, and sed with it, and therefore also it doth  
 more desyroullye couet the same, as that with  
 the which it is best acquaynted. And to be short,  
 the mothers mylke is most hollommest for the  
 chylde.

## The thirde booke.

chylde, as Auicenna wyrteth, it shalbe sufficient to geue it sucke twyse oz thyrse in a daye. And alwayes beware ye geue not the chylde to muche sucke at once in this tender age of it, for cloyng of it, and least also it lothe it: but rather let it haue often of it, and lyttle at once, then fewe tymes, and ouermuche at once. For suche as be ouer cloyed with the mothers mylke, causeth theyr body to swell and inflate, and in theyr brine shal it appeare, that it is not ouercome ne concocted oz digested in the chylde: which thyng yet yf it chaunce, let the Infant be kept fastyng vntyll such tyme as that which it hath receaued alredy be completely digested.

Item, yf the mothers mylke be somewhat sharpe oz coleryke, let her neuer geue the chylde her breast fastyng. Yf it be so that the mother can not geue the Infant sucke her selfe, eyther for because of sycknesse, oz that her breastes be soze, and her mylke corrupted: then let her chose a hollsome Nurse, with these conditions folow- yng.

To chose a  
good Nurse.

Firste that she be of a good colour and complexion, and that her bulke and breast be of good largenesse. Secondly, that it be not to soone ne to long after her labour, so that it be two monethes after her labour at the leaste, and that (yf it may be) such one whiche had a man chylde.

Thyrde, that she be of meane and measurable lykng, neyther to fatte ne to leane. Fourthly, that she be good and honeste of conuersation, neyther ouer hastye oz yrefull, ne to sadde oz so-  
lome

some, neyther to fearefull or tymorous: for these affections and qualities be pernicious and hurtfull to the mylke, corruptyng it, and passe foorth through the mylke into the chyld, making the chyld of lyke condition and manners. Also that they be not ouerlyght and wanton of behauiour. fyfthly, that her breastes be full, and haue sufficient plentie of mylke, and that they be neyther to greate, softe, hangyng, and flaggynge, ne to lyttle, harde, or contracte, but of a measurable quantitie.

Also looke vpon her mylke, that it be not blackyshe, blewyshe, grey, or reddysh, neyther sower, sharpe, saltysh, or brackyshe, neyther thynne and fluy, neyther ouer grosse and thicke, but temperately whyte, and pleasaunt in taste.

The consy-  
deration of  
the Nurses  
mylke.

And to be short, that mylke is best and mosse to be chosen, of the which a droppe beyng mylked softly vpon the nayle of the thumbe, holdyng your synger styll it rolleth not of, neyther flyteth abroad, but yf ye moue your hande a lytle it wyll syde of by and by: but yf when it is mylked on the nayle it spreade abroad, and flyt by and by, then is it to thyn, but yf it cleaue styll when that ye moue a lytle your hande, then is it to spylle and thicke. The meane betweene both is best.

If it be so that the Nurses mylke be to hot, sharpe, or colericke: then let her neuer geue the chyld sucke, her selfe beyng fastyng.

Sometyme it chaunceth that the mothers or Nurses mylke doth fayle or decrease, the  
whiche

## The childe booke.

**Diuers cau-** which thyng may come by diuers causes: as by  
**ses of the de-** sicknesse, by disease in the brestes, or by takyng  
**fect or fay-** of colde in the same, and so stoppe and cludder  
**ling of mylke** the mylke, or for because she lacketh suche thynges  
the which myght engender mylke, other by  
ouermuch fastyng, hunger and thyrst, the which  
causes muste be well considered: and then ac-  
cording to that, minister a remedie.

Thynges which do augment and encrease mylke be these.

Lette her vse to eate Parsnypp, eyther the seede  
or the roote: also the seede or roote of fferyll, sod-  
den in the broth made with Barley or Cicercula,  
let her eate of that with other meates that she  
feedeth on.

Item, to eate sheepes brestes, and the mylke of  
them is good.

Item, take an ounce of cowe butter, and dis-  
solue it in warme whyte wine, the whiche let the  
Nurse drynke.

Item, boryng vnder the brestes doth well,  
without scarification.

Item, a plaster for the same of Frankencense,  
Masticke, and Pitche, layde to the brestes, or  
vnder the brestes, the skynne fyrste beyng an-  
noynted with oyle, least it shoulde cleaue ouer  
fast to the place.

Item, it shalbe verye good to rubbe softlye  
with the hande the brestes, or els in bathyng  
after dynner or supper, to cause some to sucke her  
breast.

Item, take the oyle of whyte Lyllyes, or of  
violetttes, and myngle with it Muske, Essence,  
and

and Laudanum, well tempered together, in the same dippe a peece of woll, and clappe it to the brestes, and soke them with it.

Item washe them, and soke them often tymes with wine, in the whiche is decocte and sodden Mintes, Roses, violettes, and Xiloaloes. Also to eate of the broth in the whiche is sodden a Hen, with Cinamome, Maces, Cardamomum, and also the yolke of an egge.

Item it is good for her to eate freshe Cheese and mylke, and to refrayne from all maner of great labour and harde workes.

Also potage made of beane meale, ryce, and bread made of fine flo'wre, tempered with Milke and Suger, putting to it also a quantitie of Fenell seede, or of the leaues, is very good for her.

Item take of Annis seede, of Siler montanum, of eche three drams, of Christall beaten to powder two drams, & as muche of Suger, geue her this to drinke about ten dayes, at mornynge, euenynge, and myd day.

Item take of Fenell seede, or the leaues, and of Horehounde, of eche two handfulls, of Annis seede foure drams, of Saffron beaten one scruple, also of freshe Butter three ounces, and seethe all these in sufficient water, makynge hereof a plaster, the same plaster whilest it is hoate, laye it to the Nurses brest.

Item take of Cummin seede an ounce and an halfe, & of clarified Hony three ounces, seethe it in fiue pyntes of water altogether put into a newe pot, and let it seethe to the thirde parte, and

## The thirde booke.

of this decoction geue the Nurse oftentimes to drynke.

Item take of Beetes well washed one ounce, of Cummin halfe an ounce, of Honye sixe ounces, of these myngled and tempered together, make an electuarie, of the whiche let her take both in the moornyng and euenyng, at eche time a sponesfull.

Item take two drams of Crystall beaten into fyne powder, and diuide that in foure equall partes: one of these partes geue vnto the Nurse, the space of foure dayes to drynke, with broth made eyther of Cicer, or elles of peason.

Also all these thinges folowynge, encrease and augment Mylke in the brestes: Annise, and Annis seede, Dyll and the seede, Horehounde, Cardamomum, freshe Cheese, Wortes made of olde Cheese, Cicer, Cristal beaten to powder & taken with Hony, Lettuse, fenel, wine in whiche Rosemarye or Sauery be sodden.

Company,  
ing with  
men corrup  
tet the nur  
ses mylke.

Item to abstayne from venery or mans company: for yf the ble that, it shall spende and consume the Mylke, and make it vn-sauery and vn-holsome, neyther can the chylde well brooke it, but mooste commonly shall cast it by agayne, because it can not digest it.

Also it shalbe beste that the chylde sucke not of the Mothers breste by and by, as soone as it is borne, but rather of some other womannes, for a day or two, for because that the creame (as they call it) straight after the byrth, the fyrr day  
in

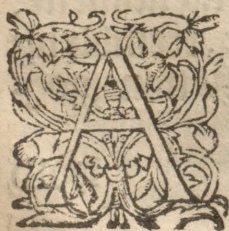


in all women doth thicken and congele.

Item, yf it chaunce that the Nurse be ouer  
soze layed, or that she be ouer bounde, so that  
she take anye medicines to remedie it: then let  
another geue the chylde sucke whylest she be  
recovered agayne. And when the chylde is layde  
in cradell to be rocked, rocke not to faste, leaste  
through ouer much rockyng and styringe, the  
chylde's stomache turne, and the Wyke there  
corrupt for lacke of rest.

Auisen aduiseyth to geue the chylde sucke two Howe long  
the chylde  
shoulde sucke  
yeares: howe be it amonge vs mooste common-  
ly, they sucke but one yere. And when ye wyll  
weane them, then do it not sodenly, but a litle  
and litle, and to make for it litle pylles of  
bread and Suger to eate, and accustome it so,  
tyll it be able to eate all maner of meate: and  
this shall suffice for the education and bringing  
bp of infantes at this tyme. Notwithstandyng  
dyuers other thynges here are left vnspoken of,  
another tyme God wylling we shal declare them  
at large.

**C** Of diuers diseases and infirmities whiche  
chaunce to chyldeyn lately borne, and the  
remedies therfore. Cap. iiii.



**A**lthough there be in ma-  
ner infinite diseases which  
happen the Infantes, as  
writeth Hipocrates, Galenus,

Many disea-  
ses of In-  
fantes.

**A ii**

Rafis,

### The thirde booke.

Racis, Auicenna, and diuers other : yet for  
brevitie and shortnesse we wyl rehearse  
here onely suche of them whiche moſte  
commonly happen to the ſame, & that  
be theſe: exulceration of the gummes,  
ſixe of the belly, or ouermuch looſenes  
of the ſame, the belly harde bounde, the  
crampe, the coughe and diſtillation of  
the head, ſhorte wyndnes, bladders on  
the tongue, exulceration or clypping of  
the mouth, apoſtume in the eares, apo-  
ſtume in the brayne, ſwelling and bol-  
nyng of the eyes, ſkumme or creame of  
the eyes, the feuer, knawynge in the bel-  
lye, the body ſwelling and puffed vp,  
often ſneeling, wheales or bladders of  
the body, ſwelling of the coddies, ſwel-  
ling of the Naryl, vnſleepineſſe, yering  
appetite to partbreake, fearefulneſſe in  
the dreames, the mother iſſuyng out of  
the fundament gutte, Wormes in the  
bellye, chaufyng, the falling ſickneſſe,  
the conſumtion, the pallye, trembling  
of the partes of the body, the ſtone, gog-  
gle eyes.

How

Howe to cure and to remedie all these, now  
wyl I shewe in order.

**F**irst in exulceration of the gummes, are Of exulce-  
ration of  
the gums.  
wont certayne pushes, and as it were whea-  
les to growe on the gummes, or in the cor-  
ners of the iawes, the whiche put the place to  
muche greeuance: and to remedie this, it shalbe  
good that ye with your synger rubbe the infan-  
tes gummes, and the pushes or whelkes withal,  
and then to annoynt the same gummes with  
oyntment made of Hennes grece, Hares or Co-  
nyes brayne, oyle of Camomell mixt with hony:  
then take water, and in it seethe Camomell and  
Dyll, the whiche water beyng hoate, powre it  
on the chyldes head, holdyng it a foote aboue the  
head.

**O**f the fixe and ouermuch loosenes  
of the belly.

**F**or this take the seede of Roses, Cumin, For the fixe  
in chyldzen.  
Annise, and the seede of Sniallage, beate  
all these together, and make them plaster-  
wyse, and lay it to the chyldes belly.

And farther, yf that it whiche the infante boy-  
deth be of redde or yelow colour, then geue it  
to drynke of the syrope of Roses, or of Crabbes,  
other els of Pomegranates, tempered with a li-  
tle Mynte water.

Item, take the seede of Sorell, and beate it,  
then temper it together with the yolke of a  
Q iii rosted

## The thirde booke.

rosted egge, and geue that to the chyld to eate, or els take of the same seede bruised fyrst, and then see the it in fayre runnyng water, thereof let the chylde drynke two or thzee tymes the day.

Item take a gall, and beate it to powder, then see the it in water, with this water temper Barlye meale, or the meale of Mellium, and make a plaster of it, the whiche laye vnto the chyldes belly.

Item, yf that that cometh from the chyld be whytyshe, then take of Nutmegs the weight of a peny, and of whyte Frankencense a scruple, or the weyght of two pence, the which temper with the iuyce of a Quince, and geue it to the chyld to drynke.

Item, take the meale of Barley, temper it with the iuyce of Plantane, and a litle wineger, and make it plaster wyle, and laye it to the chyldes belly, but beyng fyrst a litle boyled together ouer the fyre.

Item, take the iuyce of Centinodium, and the whyte of an egge, and temper them together, to the whiche adde the powder of dried red Roses, the powder of Hematites, Masticke, Frankencense, Bole armeniake, Sanguis Draconis, & the rindes of Pomegranate, of all these mixed together make a plaster, and lay it (fyrst warmed ouer the fyre) to the Infantes belly.

Item, to washe the chyld with the water in the whiche he sodden leaues of redde Roses, is very good.

Item, take the iuyce of Camfely, and the iuyce  
of

of Plantane the more and the lesse, and in this put claye of an olde furnesse or Ouen, and make of it a plaster, and lay it to the chyldes belly.

To vnloose the chyld be yng bounde.

If the chyld be so bounde, that it can not long tyme haue any stoole, then make a suppositarie of Hony, sodden till it be harde and massye, and let the suppositary be of the length of your litle finger, and the bignesse of two wheate strawes bounde together, then dippe it into oyle, and conuey it into the chyldes fundament.

Item, lyke wyse ye may make a suppositar of the stalke and the roote of Beates, or els of the roote called Dresse or flouredeluce roote, made of the quantitie before spoken, and conuayed into the sitting place of the childe.

Item, to geue to the Infant as much Hony as a pease to drynke, and to rubbe the belly a litle, and to souple it with a peece of wooll dipped in oyle, or dipped in Bulles gall, and layde to the Hauell.

Item, ye may geue vnto the Nurse a medicine whiche hath vertue to vnbynde and loose, and the next day after let the chyld sucke her, and it wyll loose also the chyld.

Item, take of small Hallowes, of great Hallowes, of eche an handfull, of fenegreke & Linseed of eche an ounce, of Holyoke two ounces, of figges the number of .v. see the all these together in water, and then stanpe them in a mortar, and

## The thirde booke.

put vnto it of Butter and of Hennes grece of eche two ounces, and of Saffron one scruple, and make a plaster of it vpon a linnen cloth, of the thichnesse of a straw, and lay it to the chyldes belly, a day and a nyght.

If this moue not the belly, then take of Aloes, Cicotrine one dram, of Heleborus both niger and albus, of eche .xv. graynes, beate these to powder, then temper them with thre sponefuls of the iuyce of Malwurt, or of Dre gall, in this licour dippe woll, and lay it to the Nauell the breadth of a hande, and bynde it to the place.

Item, take the iuyce of Malwurt and of Mill meale, & seethe those together, till they be thicke, then make a plaster thereof, and lay it to the belly beneath the Nauell.

### ¶ Remedie for the crampe or distention of the members.

If it chaunce that the infante be taken with the disease called the crampe, the whiche for the moste part commeth of indigestion, and of the weakenesse of the power attractiue, and specially in suche chyldren the whiche be verry fat and moyste, then shall ye annoynt all along the backe of the infante with the oyle of blewe flowzedeluce, or els white Lillies, either the oyle of Rue.

If the crampe take the chyld whylest it stretcheth forth the armes, legges, and other members (as we be wont in gaping or ianyng) then  
let

let it be bathed and washed in water, in the whiche prime Roses, Couslappes, or the flowres of Camomell be sodden, or els annoynt it with the oyle of violetttes, and the oyle of sweete Almons tempered together: and yf the chylde be in greate heate, annoynt him with the oyle of violetttes, or with oyle Dlyue, tempered with a litle whyte ware, and also powze on the childes head the oyle of violetttes.

Remedie for the cough and distillation, or  
Catarrhes of the head.

**S**ometymes the chylde is sore en-  
scambred with the coughe, and with  
distillation or running of humours  
out of the head, to the nose, the mouth, &  
the brest, y<sup>e</sup> which ye shal remedy thus.

fyrst powze warme water on the chyldes  
head, holdyng it a foote and a halfe from the  
chyldes head, and so do continually the space of  
halfe an houre, and in the meane whyle put a  
litle Honye on the chyldes tongue to chawe by-  
pon: then put your synger into the chyldes  
mouth, and depresse or holde downe the inner-  
moste part, or the roote of the tongue nexte to the  
throte, to prouoke the chylde to vomite, and to  
boyde the grosse and viscouse humours whiche  
be cause of this yll.

Item take Gumme Arabicke, Gumme Dra-  
gagant, the seede of Quinces, the iuyce of Ly-  
corise, and Sugar penedium, all this beaten to-  
gether

## The thirde booke.

gether, geue euery day to the chyld a quantitie with Mylke newe mylked.

Item, make Almonde mylke, with Almondes blanched, and only the iuyce or water of fenell, wherof when it is well sodden, let the chyld eate or drynke morning and euening, or anye other tyme of the day.

And yf it be so that the cough haue exasperat and made rough the tongue and the roose of the mouth, then take of the seedes of Quinces two sponesfulles, bruisse them a litle, and stype them in warme water the space of two or thre houres, then strayne the viscouse & grosse water from them through a strayner, and that remaineth, frye it together in a frying panne with Suger Penidium, and the oile off weete almondes, thereof makyng an electuarium, the whiche geue vnto the chyld to receaue: yf the chyld haue great heate with the cough, then ad vnto the same electuarie, the iuyce of a sweete Pomegranate.

Item agaynst the cough and ouer muche heate, take the seede of white Popie and Dragagant, of eche two drams, of the seedes of Gowardes foure drams, and beate all these together, and geue at once the weight of foure pence to the chyld, with the water in whiche reasons haue ben sodden.

Item, take Reasons, and doying away the graynes of it, seeth them together with water in a frying panne, so that they burne not to the bottome of the panne: then take it from the fyre  
and



and beate it well in a mortar, temperyng therewithall Suger Penidium, and geue of this in the mornyng and euenyng to the chyld.

Agayne, yf the cough come of a colde cause, then take a litle Myrthe beaten to powder, and temper it with a quantitie of warmed Hony, and the oyle of sweete Almondes, and of this geue vnto the chyld.

Furthermoze the Nurse must auoyde all such thinges, the which may engender cough, as Vineger, ouer muche salted meates, Cheese, Nuts, & all sharpe thinges. Also she must annoynt the chyldes brest with butter, and with Dialthea.

Item, for the cough, take Reasons and frye them in a frying panne, then stampe them in a mortar, and to that adde as muche of Suger Penidium, with a litle oyle of violettes, & make an electuarie of these, and geue to the chyld the mountenaunce of a hassell Nut.

Remedie for short wynde.

**M**Any tymes chaunceth also to Infantes difficultie of brething or short windnesse: the which to remedie, take Lineseede, and beate it, & geue of it vnto the chyld with Hony: but yf the disease encrease on the chyld, and that the wynde pipes in maner seeme stopped, then annoynt well the eares, and all the places about the eares with oyle Olyue, and also the tongue, for to prouoke vomite, and then powre a litle warme water into the chyldes mouth to walsh it withall, and geue to it a litle Lineseede, tempered with Honye and beaten, made after the

## The thirde booke.

the fashion of an electuarie.

Item, yf the chyld haue besydes this also the  
flic: then geue vnto it the Syrope of Myrtys,  
oher els Dates sodden with Milke and flowze.

Against wheales oz bladders on the tongue.

Item, sometymes happeneth to the  
chyldren Wheales and blisters on theyr  
tongues and mouth, Whiche thinges  
commeth of the sharpenesse and eager-  
nesse of the Nurles mylke, the mouth  
and tongue of the Infant beyng so ten-  
der, that the least thing that toucheth  
it, shal offende it: Wherfore, besides that  
it is great payne to the chyld thus to be  
blistered by the eagernes of the milke, it  
is also very perillous and dangerous.  
For suche Wheales which be not ripe &  
seeme blacke, betoken death: Whiche yf  
they be Whyte or yelowyshe, then they  
be of lesse peryll.

Agaynst this yll, take violettes and Roses,  
and see the them in a litle Rose water, and ther-  
with washe the blysters.

Item, take the iuyce of Letuse, the iuyce of  
Petie

Petrie morel, and the iuyce of Purselayne, which when they be well commixt and tempered together, annoynt therewith the whelkes. And if the foresayde blysters or whelkes be blackishe: then adde to the foresayde iuyces, Licorise beaten to powder.

Item yf the same be very moyste, then take Myrre, Galles, the rine of Frankencense, beate them wel together, and temper them with Hony, and annoynt the chyldes tongue therewith.

Item, take the iuyce of Mulberies before they be fully ripe, other els of vnrype grapes, which is called Uergeus, and with that annoynt the tongue.

Item, it is verye good to washe the tongue with redde wine, and then to strewe vpon it the powder of Galles, or els of the barke or rine of Frankencense.

Yf ye wyll haue a quicker medicine in operation and sharper: then take Bole armeniake, Psidium, and Sumach, of eche thre dramis: also of Galles two dramis, of Alome one dram, all these beate together, and searse them through a searser, and strewe that powder on the blisters.

Item yf these wheales be reddishe and cause muche spittle to gather together in that place, then let the Nurse vse suche thinges whiche are moyste and colde, and let her chawe in her mouth very small a fewe fatches, of the whiche lay on the Infantes mouth and tongue.

Item Amilum or starch tempered together with  
Rose

## The thirde booke.

Rose water, & put on the childes tongue, is good.

Item, take the iuyce of Pomegranates, the iuyce of Quinces, or the iuyce of Oranges, and do of this on the chylde's tongue in lyke maner: but yf the wheales or blysters be somewhat yelowyshe, then to these iuyces spoken of before, adde the iuyce of Lettuse and of Purselayne. But yf the wheales seme whytyshe, then take of Myrre and of Saffron, of eche one dramme, of Suger candye two drams, and beate these to powder, and lay of it on the wheales and tongue.

**C** Of erulceration or clefture, chappynge or chynnge of the mouth.

**S**ometymes by reason of the hardnes of the Nurses pappes, the chylde's lippes and mouth be erulcerate, hauing in maner of cleftes & chinnes in them: and in this case take tozed wooll, and dyp it in the iuyce of Plantaine, or els in Butter molten, or in fresh Hens greace, euery of them beyng warme, and with this annoynt the mouth and lippes of the chylde.

Of appostumation and runnyng of the eares.



**V** E R that humours and matter yssueth out of the eares, which properly commeth of aboundaunt humours in all the bodye, and most specially in the heade: then take a peece of wooll, and dyppe it in Hony mixt with redde wine, to the whiche is put also a litle quantitie

quantitie of Alome beaten to powder, or of Saffron, then make of the same as it were a tente, and put it in the chyldes eare, and when the tent hath sucked and drawen to it the humours and fylthynesse of the eare, then take it out, and put in newe: and yf that which commeth out of the eare be as matter, then take of sodden Hony, & temper it with water, put of it into the eares: or els take the powder of Galles, temperyng it with vineger, and do lyke wyse.

But yf the chyld haue great payne and dolour by wyndnesse, bentositie, and the humours in this place: then see the Organy and Myrre with oyle Olive, and so beyng warme, put of it into the eares.

### Of apostumation in the head.



If there be any apostume engendered in the head, (whiche many times chaunceth) the which causeth the chekes & eies to be greatly payned, & the eye sight to waxe wannyshe or tawnye: then must be applied such thinges whiche may refrigerate and coole the braynes: as, take of the iuyce of Cowardes, and the iuyce of Nyghtshade, iuyce of Purselayne, and temper them with the oyle of Roses, in this dyppe a peece of wooll, and laye it to the head, and as often as it waxeth drye, dyp it agayne.

*Mark of leaf  
51<sup>v</sup> upside  
down.*

## The thirde booke.

¶ Of the swelling or bolnyng of the eyes.

**A**gainst swelling and bolnyng of the eyes, take Licium, and temper it with womans Mylke, & put of it into the chyldes eyes, and bynde it to the place with a fine and soft linnen cloth, then afterwarde washe the eyes with water in which Camomel and Basill haue ben sodden. Yf that in this swelling the eyes be not red, neither the browes swollen: then take Myrre, Aloes, Saffron, and the leaues of Roses, and temper all these, and stipe them in olde wine, and binde it to the chyldes eyes with some linnen cloth, and into the chyldes nose put a quantitie of Ambre dissolved in womans Mylke.

¶ Of the scumme or whyte of the eye.

**A**gainst the scum or whyte of the eye, which for the moste parte happeneth to chyldren through ouer muche crying and weepynge, take the iuyce of Solatrum, and drop of the same into the chyldes eye, and yf by the same chaunce the bayne of the eyes ware reddishe, or be swollen, then annoynt them with the same iuyce.

¶ Agaynst inmoderate heate, or the feuer.

**I**f the infante be in greate and behemente heate contrary to nature, the whiche is called a feuer: fyrste it shalbe the Nurses part, to eate and vse suche thynges the whiche coole and moysten.

Also

Also to geue vnto the Infant of these thynges solowynge. The iuyce of Pomegranate, the water of Bourdes, Suger, with a little Camphere mixed herewithall, tempered well together. Item it is very good to prouoke it to sweatyng.

Item, take of the iuyce of Doormeewood, of Plantane, Malowes, and Singrene, and temper them altogether, and seethe them a lyttle on the fyre, in the whiche also mixe Barlye meale, and make a plaster of all these, and lay it to the chylde's breste. Also take the oyle of Roses, and the oyle of Poplar, and myxe them together, with this oymntment beyng colde annoynt the chylde's forehead, the temples, the armes, the handes about the wystes, and the pulses, and the feete about the ancles.

Item, take of Barly meale, and of dzyed Roses, and powdred, and temper these with the water of Roses, and the water of Endiue, and make thereof on the fyre a plaster, the whiche laye to the chylde's brestes somewhat warme.

Also as often as the chylde is washed, let it be done with water in whiche is sodden suche thynges whiche coole: as Letuce, Purslane, Endiue, Plantane, and suche other.

Agaynst frettyng or gnawynge in the belly.

**I**f the chylde be vexed with frettyng and gnawynge in the bellye, the whiche thyng ye shall knowe by the immoderate cryng of the chylde, and that it turneth from one syde to another with great cryng: then shall you take

Ri

warme

## The thyꝛde booke.

warne water, wherein hath ben sodden La-  
uender, Cummin, fenell seede, or the seede of  
Dyll, and oyle Oliue, temperyng them together,  
and herein dip a peece of wooll, and therewith  
sooke the chyldes belly oftentymes.

Agaynst swellng of the body.



When the chyldes bodye or any parte  
thereof is swollen & puffed by, then  
take the toppes of Elder tree, and of  
Walwurt, and seethe them in whyte  
wyne, and therein lay the Infant,  
Speciallye yf it be not taken with ouer greate  
heate: but yf so be that with swellng in the  
head the bellye be swollen also, thē take Myrre,  
Aloes epatike, and Saffron, and beate them al-  
together, and temper them with the iuyce of  
Beanes, and lay it to the chyldes head.

Agaynst often sneesng.

Sometymes the Infantes be sore troubled  
and vexed with often sternutation and  
sneesng: whiche thyng yf it come of the  
apostume in the head, then shal ye minister such  
thynges to the head, whiche refrigerate and  
coole, whether it be oyles, oyntmentes, iuyces  
of the hearbes, or other thynges. If this come  
of any other cause then of apostume: then take  
Basyll be it greene or drye, and put of the iuyce  
or powder of it into the chyldes nose. But yf  
this sneesng come and begyn with heate, and  
that the chyldes eyes seeme as they grewe in-  
warde for payne thereof: then lay to the chyldes  
head



head the leaues of Purslane, or Gowarde cutte in thynne slyces and tempered with the oyle of Roses, and Barley meale, and also the yolke of an egge.

Of whelkes in the body, and the cure.

**T**Hese whelkes yf they appeare blacke vppon the body, they signifie peryll of lyfe, and so muche the moze, the greater quantitie that there is of them: but yf they seeme whytyshe or reddishe, it is no peryll, and may easily be cured. Wherefore take the leaues of the redde Rose, the leaues of Mirtills, and of Tamariscus, and seeth these in water, and in that water wet a linnen cloth, and soke therewith the whelkes.

Item, lyke wyle it is good to annoynte the same with the oyle of Roses, of Mirtilles, and Tamariscus. If the whelkes be whyte or reddishe, then let them be rype before ye minister anye thing to them: and when they be open and begyn to matery, then to cleanse, purifie, and to drye them, beyng rype and broken, it is verye good to washe the same whelkes with Sulsum or Hydromell, in whiche Saltpeter is dissolved. Sulsum and Hydromell is, water and Honye sodden together.

Agaynst swellng of the coddess.

**M**Any tymes chaunceth to chyldren (thorowe ouermuche crying) swellng about the coddess, and sometymes buritenesse,

R ii

and

## The thyꝛde booke.

and swelling in the inner part of the thyghes, the whiche swelling sometymes commeth by inflammation or great heate, and sometyne with only wyndynesse. If it come of wyndynesse, then the coddess wyll sometymes appeare so styffe as a tabour, and shyne as it were an horne. The remedye for this is to take a quart of double Beere woort, and therein seethe of the leaues of Bay halfe a handfull, of Rue a quarter of an handfull, of fenell, Dyll, and Camomell, of eche a meane handfull: cutte and broose all these hearbes together, and seethe them from the quarte to the pinte, then strayne them strongly from the liquer, in the whiche liquer seethe so muche beane flowre as may serue to make a plaster, therto addyng at the latter ende two or thre spoonesfulles of oyle of Camomell, and lay this plaster hotte to the coddess. If the swelling come of heate, then alay the same with some colde hearbes, suche as I haue often tymes spoken of before.

### ¶ Agaynst swelling of the Hauyll.

**A**lso sometymes the chyldes Hauyll swelleth, and specially strayght after the byrth when it is cutte. For this, take Spyke Celtyke, and seethe it in the oyle of Almondess, myxed with a lytle Turpentine: then in this dyppe wooll, and lay it on the place.

But yf so be that this swelling come of ouermuche cryng, cough, or of a stroke or fall: Then take better Lupines, and the powder of  
fayze

faire olde linnen cloth burnt to powder, and temper these with red wine, and then in this dyp a peece of towe, and lay it to the Nauyll.

¶ Agaynst vnslleepynesse.

**A**gainst vnslleepynesse, that is, when the child is destitute and wanteth his due and naturall rest, all the whyle cryng and weepynge. For this take two heades (with the seedes therein containd) of whyte Popie, and with one sponesfull of Rose water, and three or foure droppes of Vineger, stampe them in a mortar reasonably, then adde thereto two sponesfulles of womans milke, and the waight of an halfpenny of Saffron, with halfe a sponesfull of Barlie flowre, the whiche yet stampe a little together agayne, and then laye it in a fine thynne double linnen cloth, and applie it to the forehead from one temple to the other.

Item, geue the chyld to drynke a little of the syrope of Popie. Also to annoynt the temples with the oyle of Popie is very good.

But yf this vnslleepynesse come of the impuritie of the Nurses mylke (as manye tymes it doth) then take of the oyle of violettes, and put vnto it a little quantitie of vineger, and of this licour droppe oftentymes into the chyldes nostrilles. Or els take the oyle of Roses, and temper it with the iuyce of Letuse, and therewith annoynt the head and the stomacke of the chyld, and farther, see that the Nurses mylke may be amended.

## The thirde booke.

¶ Agaynst peryng oz the hychate.

**H**is peryng commeth eyther of coldnesse of the stomacke, other els of ouermuche fulnesse, oz for lacke of meate and emptines of the stomacke, oz els by some hotte and colerike qualittie bytyng vppon the mouth of the stomacke.

As often as it commeth by the aboundaunce of meate and fulnesse, the remedie is to prouoke it to vomite. If by coldenes of the stomacke, then annoynt the stomacke with the oyle of Bayes warmed, other els lay to the stomacke a plaster made of the seede of Dyll, beaten and tempered with the iuyce of Hyntes.

But yf it chaunce by any heate oz coleryke qualittie, then take the oyle of Violettes, oz of Roses, the iuyce of Endiue, oz of any other suche hearbes the whiche haue power to infrigidate and coole, and temper the same with womans mylke, and annoynt therewith the chyldes stomacke.

And when it proceedeth by defecte and lacke of meate oz emptinesse of the stomacke, then geue to the chyld to feede vppon mylke, and other good hollsome thynges to suppe, neyther passe not greatly though the chyld reiecte and vomite by agayne that the whiche it receaueth, for so muche euer wyll remayne in the stomacke that shalbe sufficient to sustayne it, and meanely to nourrysh it.

¶ Agaynst

Agaynst often parbreakynge by weakenesse and  
feblennesse of the stomacke.



Gainst ouermuch parbreaking, beat  
foure graynes of Cloues, and geue it  
to the chyld to drynke with foure or  
fyue spoonesfulles of red wine.

Item, take of Masticke, whyte  
frankencense, and the leaues of the red Rose  
so muche as shalbe sufficient, and all these beater  
together, temper them with the iuyce of Myn-  
tes, and make a plaster of it, laying it to the  
chylde's stomacke. But yf the chylde's vomityng  
be very behement, then put vnto these foresayde  
thynges a quantitie of Rose vineger.

Item, take fine meale, and bake it so hot in  
an ouen, or els in a frying panne ouer the fyre  
tyll it waxe browne, then beate it to powder a-  
gayne, puttyng it into vineger, and to these ad-  
the yolke of an egge hard roasted, Masticke, fran-  
kencense, and Gumme Arabicke, and temper all  
these with the iuyce of Myntes, making of it a  
plaster, the whiche laye to the chylde's stomacke,  
and to the chylde's mouth and nose hold a warme  
toste of breade.

Causes of this yll be thre. The fyrst, yf the  
chylde haue taken more mylke then it is able to  
concocte and digest. The seconde, yf the Dur-  
les mylke be ouerthinne, wateryshe, and flutthe.  
The thyrde, yf the same mylke be impure, fe-  
culent, and corrupte. These causes prouoke vo-  
mitye, and specialllye yf the chylde also haue a  
weake

## The chyꝛde booke.

weake and waterishe stomache: wherfore ye m ust helpe the Infant after this maner.

First let the childe sucke lesse then it did before, and then also marke that which the childe doeth perbꝛake, whether it sauer sharpely lyke Vaineger, or that it be whytyshe. For yf it be so: then take of whyte frankensence. viii. graynes, of dꝛyed Rue. xx. graynes: beate these to powder, and geue it to the childe to dꝛinke, with the syꝛope of red Roses.

Or els let the Nurse chawe Cummin, and so put it into the chyldes mouth: Geue also of the syꝛope of Pomegranates, with the powder of dry Myntes to the chyldes.

Take Masticke, Accatia, Xiloaloes, Galles, whyte frankensence, tosted bread, of eche lyke much, beate them together, puttyng to of red Roses, and temperyng it with the conserue of Roses, and lay it to the chyldes stomache.

But if it so be that the perbꝛakyng of the childe sauer not after the fashion of Vaineger, but after some other sowꝛe sauour, and that it be not whytyshe, but pale or yelowyshe: then geue it the iuyce of Quinces, and lay this plaster vnto the chyldes stomiache. Take Barlye meale, wyld Mulberies, and Psidium, beate all these together, and temper it with Rose water, and lay it to the chyldes stomache.

And furthermore, yf the chyldes stomache be somewhat waterishe, and slowe in digestion, then annoynt it with the water of Roses, in the which Huske hath ben dissolued, or els the water

water of Mirtylles, and geue it to drynke the iuyce of Quinces, with a little Cloues and Sugar, or with a scruple of Nutmegges therewith tempered and mixed.

¶ Agaynst fearfull and terrible dreames.

**A**lso sometyme the chyldren be vexed and vnquieted with fearefull and terrible dreames in their sleepe, which thyng for the most part commeth of the aboundaunce of foode, and ouermuch meate or drynkes, which for the copie and superfluitie therof, can not be conuict ne ouercome of nature, wherfoze necessarily it putrifieth and corrupteth: the noysome & hidyous vapours wherof, stying by to the head in tyme of sleepe, causeth these terrible fantasies in the sleepe. And thus may it be remedyed. First take heede that ye lay not the chyld to sleepe straght after it hath fed, and also let it liche a litle hony, swallowyng it downe, so that by it, such thinges the which be somewhat harde to digest and concoct, may the sooner be digested, and the refuse the more easly to descende into the guttes.

Item, euery day geue to the Infant halfe a dram of the electuarie called Diamuscum, or Diaplicis. Also Triacle in this case is very good, taken with mylke, as saith Rasis.

¶ Agaynst issuyng soozth of the sandament gut.

**F**OR the issuyng soozth of this gut, when the chyldre laboureth to ease it selfe: Take Mirtylles, Acozne cuppes, red Roses dyed, burnt

## The thyꝛde booke.

burnt Hartes hornes, burnte Alome, Goates  
hoofe, Balauftium, and Galles, of eche lyke much,  
and seethe all these together with water, so long  
till the water haue receaued the strength of the  
ingredience, and with this water beyng warme,  
washe the gut, and so conuey it into the bodye a  
gayne, as I taught you in the seconde booke.

### ¶ Agaynst Tenasmus.



Enasmus is a disease when the  
child enforceth it self to the stoole,  
and yet can do nothyng, the whi-  
che thying oftentymes chaunceth  
to children, moſte commonly pro-  
ceedyng of colde. Agaynſte the  
which, ye ſhall vſe theſe remedies. Take Garden  
Crefles and Cummin ſeede, of eche lyke muche,  
beate them together and temper them with olde  
butter, and geue it to drynke to the chylde with  
colde water.

Item, take Turpentine, and laye it vppon  
coales, whoſe ſume let the chylde receaue be-  
neathe in the fundement, the ſume beyng inclo-  
ſed rounde about with clothes.

Item, take Tarre, and lyke wyſe make ſume  
of it, receauyng the ſume as before.

Agaynſt wooꝛmes in the belly.

Sometymes there breede wooꝛmes in the  
guttis, of the bygnelle and quantitie of  
ſuche as are wonte to be in olde Cheeſe,  
called Mytes, and ſome lyke lycs. And ſometyme  
in the belly be engendred wooꝛmes of the byg-  
nelle



nesse of earth woormes, called Castes. Agaynst these vse this remedy, Take the water of Centum nodia, and geue it to the chyld to drynke with mylke.

Item, take of whyte Corall, the scraping of Iuery, of Hartes horne burnte, and of Treos, of eche a scruple, of Suger candie one ounce and an halfe, of the water of Centum nodia, so muche as shalbe sufficient to temper all these thynges before, and of this make suppositaries, ministring to the chyld euey day the wayght of two drammes.

Othervyse accordyng to Rasis mynde: Take of Cummin seede as muche as shalbe sufficient, and temper it with Dre gall, making thereof a plaster, the whiche ye shall lay to the Infantes Pauyll.

Item, oyle Olive taken and drunken a small quantitie thereof, is very good to kyl all maner of woormes whiche breede in the gutte, neere to the fundement: Take the fynest cotten, & thereof make suppositaries, the which ye shall annoynt with the oyle of Wormewood, or of Rue, or of the kynelles of Peaches, or the oyle of bytter Almondes, and so to conuey it into the chyldes syttyng place.

Item, it shall greatly profite the chyld, yf it be washed in the water in whiche is sodden Wormewood, and the leaues of Peaches.

Item, an oyntmente for the same. Take of Wormewood & of Lupines, of eche two dramis, of  
Siler

Siler montanum, Cummin, Cockle, Centorie, and Centonicum, and of Hartes horne burnt, of eche foure drammes, all these thynges beaten together, temper them in the oyle of Wormewood, or of bytter Almons the wayght of two ounces, puttyng to it foure drammes wayght of ware, and make hereof an oyntment, and annoynt the chyldes belly therewith by the fire, or in some warme place.

Item, take of Cockle two drammes, of Wormewood and Masticke of eche one dram, of Aloes, red Corall, of eche two drammes, of Coriander preparat, sixe drammes, beate all these well together. Adde also to these, of Rye meale thre ounces, of Lupines beaten to powder, sixe drammes, of Saffron two drammes, temper all these in two ounces of the iuyce of Rue, and foure ounces of the iuyce of Wormewood, or of the oyle of the same, and make hereof a plaster, and lay it vnto the chyldes Nauyll the breadth of a hande.

Item, geue the chyld the wayght of foure pence of the powder of Aloes cicotrine, with fayre water fyfte sodden and sweeted with Suger, or els with single beare, and this no doubt is soueraigne.

Item, agaynst the great and long wormes. Take of the iuyce of Wormewood, and of Dre gal, of both two ounces, of Colocinthis, viiii. drammes, temper all these well together, addyng to it a little wheaten meale, and make hereof a plaster, the whiche laye to the Nauyll of the chyld.

Item,

Item a bathe for the same.

Take Wormewood, and Gauls, and seethe them in water, and let the chyilde be bathed in it by to the Nauyll.

Of chaufyng or gallyng in any place of the body.

**A**gainst gallyng or chaufyng of the chyldes skynne, by reason of the acrimonie & sharpnes of vrine or sweate: Take Mirtills and beate them to powder, and strewe thereof on the place. Item, take of Irios, of the red Rose, of Ciprus, of Tragacantum, so much as shalbe thought sufficient, and beate them all, or part of them, and strewe of the powder on the chaufed places.

Item, take of the oyle of Roses one ounce, of whyte Frankencense one dramme, and melt these together, and then take eyght graynes of Camphire dissolued in Rose water, and myxt therewithall, and of all this make an oyntment, and annoynt the chaufed place therewithall.

Also Vnguentum album, and Vnguentum rubeum be good for this purpose.

Item, the decoction and fomentation with the water wherein Plantane, knot grasse, docke rootes, or Bursa pastoris is sodden, is very good for the same.

Of the fallyng sicknesse.

**S**ometymes these Infantes be beryed and Sencumbred with the fallyng sycknesse, and that two maner of wayes. One is, that  
it

## The thyꝛde booke.

It hath this disease straght foorth with the byrth: Cause of the whiche, is colde and yll humours in the head and braynes. Another is, that it taketh this infirmitie after the byrth by some accidentall causes, in whiche case, yf it leaue not the childe, being a manchylde, before he be .xxv. yeres of age, and the woman chylde about the tyme of hauyng her fyrste flowres: yf it forsake them not in this space, neyther by the myght of nature, neyther of medicines, then is it lyke neuer to depart from them.

Agayne, yf this disease come not by nature, but by some accidentall cause afterwarde, then geue diligent heede that the Nurles mylke be very good, and conuenient to the chyldes nature. And for the same purpose yf necessitie require, it shalbe very good to purge and cleanse the Nurles bodye with due and meete medicines, and she must auoyde all suche thynges the which do coole and moysten, and to suffer the chyld to receaue no more mylke at once, then it may be able well to digest.

Agaynst this cruell disease, auchours muche commende the roote of a Dionie, only hanged about the chyldes necke.

Item, the same roote dyled and beaten to powder, and so oftentimes geuen to the chyld to take, sometymes with drynke, sometymes with potage, pap, or mylke, or any other wayes. Lykewylse the seede of Dionie is very good.

Farthermore, powze nowe and then into the chyldes nosethryls of oyle of Castorium, or the oyle

of Costus, or of Euforbium: Also let the chyilde smell to Rue and to Asa fetida.

Item, to hang Viscum quersimum, which is gathered in Marche the moone decreasyng, about the chyldes necke, is verye good. Dyuers other thynges there be whiche myght be here rehearsed, but this shalbe sufficient at this tyme.

¶ Consumption or pynnyng away of the body.



When the Infant falleth away, and the fleshe rebateth, remainyng nothing but as it were skyn and bone, and thereby the chyld wareth synchlye: Then let the Infante be often bathed in water, in whiche hath ben sodden the head and the feete of a weather, so long tyll the fleshe part from the bones of his owne accorde, and euery tyme that the chyld cometh forth of the bath, fyrst let it be wyped and dyled cleane, and then annoynte it with this oyntmente.

Take freshe Butter, oyle of violettes, and oyle of Roses, of eche one ounce, of the fatte of freshe Porke halfe an ounce, of white ware two drammes, melt all these thynges together, and make an oyntment of it, annoyntyng therewith the chyldes body.

Item, take white ware, Swines grease, sheepes tallowe, freshe Butter, melte all these thynges together, and strayne them, makyng of it an oyntment, and annoynte the chyld withall once or twyse euerye daye. But the cheefe hope  
of

of restauration muste be in light, restoratyue, and pure nourishing meates.

¶ Of lassitude, weerynesse, or heauynesse of the chyldes body.

**S**ometymes it chaunceth that the chyldes members of the body be so feeble, as though it had the paultie, so that with that partes of the bodye, the chyld can not helpe it selfe, neither can it lyft by the handes, armes, ne stand on the feete. If the chyld haue this disease whilist it sucketh, then let the Nourse be comforted, and strengthened with suche thynges the whiche haue vertue to heate and to drye. Also let the Nourse feede only vpon rosted and fryed meates, and that she forbear from mylke, fysh, and harde or salt powdered fleshe, for commonlye this disease spryngeth of colde and moyste humours, besieging the sinewes.

¶ farthermore, let not the Nourse vse any watered wine, or mixed, but mere and in his owne kynde, and let her bathe the chyld euer before she geue it sucke, after annoyntyng it with the oyle of Castorium, or the oyle of Costum, and let the chyld drynke euery day a quantitie of this electuarie folowynge.

Take Garden Mint, Cinamome, Cummin, drye Roses, Mastick, fenugreke, Valeriane, Amios, Doronicum, Zedoarium, Cloues, Saunders, Xiloadoes, of ech a dram, of Muske halfe a dramme, beate all those to powder, and confict them with clarified and depured honye, make thereof an electuarie,

The thirde booke. Fol. Cxliiij.

electuarie, of the whiche euery day geue vnto the chylde the weyght of two pence to drynke with whyte wine. If the chylde haue this disease in euery part of his bodye, then take an ounce of ware, and a dram of Euforbium, the which Euforbium ye shall beate in a morter with .v. oz. vi. droppes of oyle, tyll it be perfectly beaten, then temper them together ouer the fyre, adding ther vnto so much oyle as may be sufficient to make a searecloth, and lay it to the raynes of the backe.

**C** Of tremblyng of the body, or of certayne members of the body, called the Palsey.

**I**f the chylde happen to be bered with tremblyng or shaking of the body, or the partes thereof, so that ye feare the palsy of the same parte, or that the falling sicknesse shoulde ensue: then remedie it after this meanes. Take the oyle of Roses, and the oyle of Spykenarde, and temper them together, warmyng it, and therewith annoynt the backe or raynes, and the other shaking members: ye may also take any other oyle the which hath vertue to warme and calefie, as the oyle of Bayes, and such other.

Item, to bathe the chylde in the decoction of Rosemarye, Sage, Tyme, Hysope, Sauery, Alexander, Smallage. &c. is very soueraigne.

If you can not cure it by this meanes, then demaunde farther counsaile of the Physicians.

1144

**S**i Agaynst

## The thirde booke.

Agaynst the strangury or stone, with stopping  
of the bryne.

**S**trangury, Dysury, and the difficultie in  
Smakyng of water, oftentimes chaunceth  
to children by reason of the stone, or aboun-  
daunce of grauell, other els many tymes of some  
other viscos, slimye, and flegmatike matter, in  
maner and fourme of dregs or ragges ouerwhar-  
ting and crossing the passage, whereby the brine  
shoulde passe foorth, in such wyse, that (without  
great payne) the chylde can not make his water,  
and that yet but in small quantitie at once.

Whiche of these wayes so euer it come, it shal-  
be verye good to bathe the chylde by to the Fla-  
uyll in the decoction of Paritorie of the wall,  
Mallowes, Holyoke, Lyneseede, Lillie rootes,  
Fenegreke, and Sauery, other els with a sponge  
or double linnen cloth dypped therein, estsones  
to foment the share and neather part of the belly  
agaynst the bladder.

But in men chyl dren cheefely foment them  
on the straighes, betweene the fundement and  
the coddes, the whiche place in Latine is called  
Perineum, for there in them lyeth the necke of the  
bladder. After this bathyng or fomentation,  
dye the places fomented, and whilest they be yet  
redde with bathyng, annoynt them with the oyle  
of scorptions, to be hadde at the Apothecaries, or  
els the oyle called Petroleum.

And yf farther neede shall require it, ye may  
applie



applie this plaster folowynge to the foresayde places. Take of Parsley, and of Alexander, of eche halfe an handfull, of Paritorie, Malloves, Holyoke rootes, of eche an handfull, seethe these hearbes together in good stale ale, tyll such tyme as they be soft, then powze out the ale from them, and stamp the hearbes in a stone mortar, adding therebnto of the seedes of fenegreke and Line, of eche halfe an ounce, beyng fyrst beaten to subtyll powder.

Item of Cummin seede the wayght of foure grotes, beaten lykewyse to fine powder, of the oyle of Scorpions, Petroleum, or other appertiffe oyle one ounce and an halfe, of all these well commixed together, make a plaster, and lay to the places aforesayde. To speake of any medicines to be administrated in wardes, it is but folly, for so muche as it is so harde to cause a chylde to take any thing within foorth.

This difficultie in makynge water, maye ensue by other meanes, whereof we neede not to speake at this tyme.

Of goggle eyes, or loking a squint.

If the chylde haue goggle eyes, or that it looke a squynt, then fyrst sette the cradell in suche a place, that the lyght maye come directly and ryght in the chylde's face, neyther in the one syde, neyther in the other, neither aboue the head, lest it turne the syght after the lyght. Also marke on whiche side that the eyes do goggle, and let the lyght come bnto it on the

## The thirde booke.

contrary syde, so to returne the syght. And in the nyght season sette a candell on the contrary syde, so that by this meanes, the goglyng of the eyes may be returned to the ryght place. And further it shalbe good to hang clothes of diuers and freshe colours on the contrary syde, and specially of the colour of light greene, or yelow, for the chylde shall haue pleasure to behold these straunge colours. And in returnyng the eye sight towarde suche thynges, it shalbe occasion to rectifie the syght agayne. And this shalbe sufficient for this tyme, of the diseases of chyldren after they be borne, makyng here an ende of this third booke for this tyme.

Of such thinges the Which shalbe en-  
treated of in this fourth booke.

Cap. i.



Here in this fourth booke  
(by the leaue of God) shall  
brieffly be declared suche  
thynges whiche may far-  
ther or hynder the concep-  
tion of man, whiche as it may be by  
dyuers meanes letted and hyndered, so  
also by many other wayes, it maye be  
farthered and amended. Also to knowe  
by certayne signes and tokens, whe-  
ther the woman be conceaued or no,  
and whether the conception be male or  
female, and finally certayne remedies  
and medicines to farther and helpe  
conception, and thereafter we wyll (ac-  
cording to our promyse in the Pro-  
logue) set forth certayne bellifying re-  
ceptes, and so make an ende of this  
whole treatise.

S iii

Of

Of conception, and how many wayes it may  
be hindred or letted. Cap. ii.

**H**ere is nothing vnder heauen whi-  
che so manyfest and playnely doeth  
declare and shewe the magnificent  
mightinesse of the omnipotent ly-  
uing God, as doth the perpetuall  
and continuall generation and conception of ly-  
uyng thinges here in earth, by the whiche is sa-  
ued, prozaged, and augmented the kynde of all  
thinges. And where that this almyghtie Lorde  
and creature hath so institute and ordained, that  
no singuler thing in it selfe (here vpon the earth)  
shoulde continually remayne and abide: yet hath  
he geuen from the beginning and instinced such  
a power and bertue vnto these mortal creatures,  
that they may engender and produce other lyke  
thinges vnto them selfe, and vnto their owne  
similitude, in the which alway is saued the seede  
of posteritie. Were not this prouision had by al-  
myghtie God, the nature and kinde of all maner  
of thinges woulde soone perishe and come to an  
ende, the which bertue and power of generation  
many times doth halte and misse, by defect and  
the contrary disposition in the partes generant:

As ye maye euidentlye see in the sowynge of  
come and all other maner of seede, so that there  
be in all maner of generation thre principall  
partes concurrent to the same, the sower, the  
seede sower, and the receptacle or place recea-  
uyng

uyng and contaynyng the seede . Yf there be faulte in anye of these thre, then shall there neuer be due generation, vnto suche tyme as the faulte be remoued, or amended.

The earth vnto all seedes, is as a Mother and Nurse, contayning, clipping and embracing them in her wombe, feeding and fosteryng them as the Mother doth the chyld in her bellye or Matrix, vntyll suche tyme as they come vnto the growth, quantitie, and perfection due vnto their nature and kinde: But yf this seede conceaued in the bowels of the earth, do not proue or fructifise, then be thou sure that eyther there is let in the sower, in the seede, or els in the earth.

The earth may be ouer wateryshe, dankishe, or ouer hoate and drye, or els full of stones, grauel, or other rubbische, or ful of yll weedes, which may strangle and choke the good corne in his growyng: also the seede may be putrified, or otherwyle viciate and corrupted, and so the lyfe and spirite of it banished away and destroyed. The sower maye vnoordinately strewe and cast the seede on the earth. &c. So that yf there be let in none of these partes concurrent to generation, or that the letters be remoued and done awaye, then doubtlesse wyll ensue multiplicati- on and encrease of that kynde of the whiche the seede commeth, accordyng to the naturall inclination, the whiche almyghtie God hath enplanted and sette in the kynde of all thynges.

## The fourth booke.

Howe many wayes conception may be letted,  
and howe the causes may be knowen.

Capit. iii.

**E**very thing then, the which doth encrease in this kind, must fyrst be conceaued in y<sup>e</sup> womb and Matrix of the Mother, whiche is apte and conuenient for the receate of such seede. And as I sayd before, as there may be defect and lacke in the Mother receauing the seede, so may there be fault and defect in the sower, and in the seede it selfe also.

And in women there may be foure generall causes, by the whiche the conception may be impeditie and let: ouer muche caliditie or heate of the Matrix, ouermuch coldnes, ouermuche humiditie or moystnes, and ouermuch drynes. Any of these foure qualities exceedyng temperancie, may be sufficient causes to let due conception.

Wherefore the ryght excellent Philisition Hipocrates in the. v. booke of his Amphorismes saith: All suche women the whiche haue colde and dense Matrices, can not conceaue, and suche as haue moyste and watery the Matrices can conceaue, for the power of the seede is ertinguished in it. Also hauing drye Matrices, conceaue not, for the seede perisheth for lacke of due nutriment and foode: but that Matrix the which hath all these qualities in temperauncie, that is fruitefull. This is Hipocrates saying, the which thyng also

also may be well perceaued by a famillier examp<sup>le</sup> of the sowynge of corne.

For yf it be sowen in ouer colde places, suche as be in the partes of a countrey called S<sup>i</sup>thia, and in certayne places of Almayne, or in suche places where a continuall snowe or frosse, or where the Sunne doth not shyne, in these places the seede or grayne sowen, wyll neuer come to prooffe, nor fructifie, but through the behement coldnesse of the place, in the whiche it is conceaued, the lyfe and quicknesse of the grayne is vtterlye destroyed and adnihilate.

And farther as concernyng ouer muche humiditye, yf ye sowe your grayne in a fen or marishe and watery grounde, the seede wyll perishe through the ouermuch abundance of water, whiche extinguissheth the liuelynesse and the naturall power of the grayne and seede.

Lyke wyse yf it be sowen in such a countrey or place where is ouer great heate, not tempered with water and rayne, or yf the yere be so drye, that there come no rayne at all to alaye the extreme and feruent heate of the Sunne: then shall the seede sowen, wyther and drye awaye, and the power of it be consumed and burnt.

Also yf it be sowen in drye places, where neuer commeth rayne, or on the lande, and grauely places, in suche a place the grayne can neuer take, ne proue, ne be conceaued in it, to come to any fruite or profite.

Wherefore yf the Matrix be distempered, by  
the

## The fourth booke.

the excelle of any of these foure qualities, then must ye reduce it againe to temperauncie, by such remedies as I shall shew you hereafter. Likewise may there be defect and lacke in the man: as yf the seede be ouer hotte, the whiche the woman shall feele as it were burnyng hot, or to colde, the which she shall feele as it were in maner colde as yse, or to fluye or thinne. &c. Diuers other wayes also it may be letted, whiche shall not neede here to be rehearsed.

Nowe yf the woman can not conceaue, the cause comming of ouermuch frigiditie or colde-nesse in the Matrix, that shall she know by these tokens. She shall feele great colde about the sides, the raynes of the backe, and the Matrix, her brine shall appeare whyte and thinnishe, and sometimes also somewhat spisse and thicke, and all maner of colde thinges shall noy her, hotte thinges shall greatly comfort her.

But yf it come by ouermuche humiditie of the Matrix, that shall she knowe by these signes. If the bodye of her be of a fat & grosse disposition, yf with her flowres issue foorth at the begynnyng and the latter ende of them certayne viscus and watery substaunce, and that her brine be white, thicke, and sometyme as it were mylke. Also that she feele great colde and payne about the Matrix and priue partes, and much dolour in her sides, and in the raynes of her backe.

And when ouermuch heate or dryth in the Matrix is cause of the hynderaunce of conception, then is the brine hye coloured, redde, or yellowe,



lowe, beyng thinne, with certayne motes appearing in the water: the woman hath greates thyrst, and bytter rysing or belchynges out of the stomache into the mouth. And many tymes they that are in this case, are very spare and leane in all their bodye, hauing also but small quantitie of flowres, the whiche thyng maye happen eyther by ouer muche watche, or ouer-much fastyng, labour, trauaile, sorowe, sicknesse, &c. But suche women whiche naturally are thus spare and leane, may very hardlye be brought to a temperancie agayne, and be made apt to conceaue. And this shalbe sufficient for this tyme, to knowe whiche qualittie by his excessse causeth sterilitie. Howe wyll we shew how it shalbe knowen, whether lacke of conception be in the woman, or els in the man, and how to knowe whether the woman be conceaued or no, accordyng to the mynde of ryght expert Physicians.

**Howe to knowe whether lacke of conception be of the woman or of the man, and howe it may be perceaued whether she be conceaued or no. Cap. iiii.**



If ye be desirous to know whether the man or the woman be hinderance in conception: Let eche of them take of wheate

## The fourth booke.

Wheate and Barlye cornes, and of Beanes of eche .viii. the which they shall suffer to be steeped in their seuerall byrne the space of twentie and foure houres: then take two pottes, such as they set Gelsidowes in, fill them with good earth, and in the one let be sette the wheate, Barlye, and Beanes, steeped in the mans water, and in the other the wheate, Barlye, and Beanes steeped in the womans water, and every morning the space of .viii. or .x. dayes, let eche of them with their proper byrne water the saide seedes so wen in the foresayde pottes: and marke whose potte doth proue, and the seedes therein contayned doth growe, in that partie is not the lacke of conception: and see that there come no other water or rayne on the pottes: but trust not much this farre set experiment.

Item, accordyng to Hipocrates wytyng, yf ye wyll know whether the faulte be in the woman or no, then let the woman receaue into her body vnderneath, beyng well and closely closed round about, the fume of some odoriferous perfume, as Laudanum, Storax calamite, Lignum Aloes, Muske, Ambre, and such other: and yf the odour and sauour of suche thinges ascende thoro we her body by vnto her nose, ye shall vnderstande that sterilitie commeth not of the womans parte: yf not, then is the defect in her.

Item, yf the take Garlick be yng pilled out of the huskes, and conuaye of it into the priute partes, and yf the sent of it ascende vypp thoro we the body vnto the nose, the woman is faultlesse,

fautlesse: yf not, then is there lacke in her. These tokens, although they haue a certayne reason and appearaunce, yet be they not alwayes infallible, but only likely.

Whether she be conceaued alreedy or no, ye shall knowe by these signes. First the flowres issue not in so great quantitie as they are wont, but waxe lesse and lesse, and in maner nothyng at all commeth from them. Also the brestes begin to waxe rounder, harder, and styffer then they were wont to be: the woman shall long after certayne thynges, otherwyle then she was bled to do before that tyme. Also her byrne wareth spylle and thychke by retention of the superfluities. Also the woman feeleth her Matrix very fastly and closely shutte, insomuche that as Hipocrates sayth, the poynt of a needle may scarse enter.

To knowe whether the woman be conceaued, or no.

Item, to knowe whether she be conceaued or no, accordyng to Hipocrates mynde, in the .v. of his Ampho. Geue vnto the woman when she is goyng to bedde, a quantitie of Mellicratum to drynke, and yf after that drynke she feele great payne, gnawynge, and tumblyng in her bellye, then be ye sure that she is conceaued. This Mellicratum is a drinke, made of one part wine, another part water, sodden together, with a quantitie of hony.

But yf ye be desyrous to knowe whether the conception be man or woman, then let a droppe of her mylke or twayne be mylked on a smothe glasse, or a bryght knyfe, other els on the nayle  
of

## The fourth booke.

of one of her fyngers, and yf the mylke flewe and spreade abrode bpon it by and by, then is it a woman chyld: but yf the drop of Mylke continue and stande styll bpon that the which it is mylked on, then is it a signe of a man chyld.

Item if it be a male, then shal the woman with chyld be well colozed, and lyght in goyng, her belly rounde, bigger towarde the right syde, then the left (for commonly the man chyld lyeth in the ryght side, the woman in the lefte side) and in the tyme of her bearyng she shal better digest and lyke her meate, her stomacke nothyng so queysene feble.

Of certayne remedies and medicines which may farther the woman to conceaue. Cap. v.



A sterilitie then for the most part ensueth and commeth of the distemperauncie of one of these foure fornamed qualities, wherefore the remedie and cure of the same when it chaunceth, muste be done by such thinges the which haue contrary power & operation to the excessiue qualitie, for by that shall it be reduced to his temperauncie agayne.

As yf that coldnesse and moistnesse exceading temperauncie in the Matrix be occasion of sterilitie, then muste she applie suche thinges to that place the whiche be of nature hot and drye, the whiche may califie and warme the place, and also drye by the yll moystnes and humours conteyned

ned in the same, hyndering conception.

And for because that the moste generall and common cause of sterilitie doth proceede of colde, wateryshe, and flegmaticke humours, whiche bedeawnyng the inner sides and holonesse of the Matrix, with the porte and mouth thereof also, causeth that the seede sent from the man into the womans wombe or Matrix, can not there remaine ne cleaue: neither is the mouth or port of the wombe apte or able to close it selfe sufficiently after the reception of the seede, the flewme and slimie humours withstandyng it, the which bristle they be discussed, or dzyed away, the seede alway slippereth and slideth forth as faste as it entreteth in.

Wherefore to remedie and to do away the foresayde impediment, ye shall vse the meanes whiche foloweth.

Firste, within a day or two after the womans Termes be passed, let her by the aduyce of some Physitian take a purgation, whiche may purge flewme and wateryshenes, and then the next or the thirde day after, let her sit in a bath by almoste to the Hauill, in the whiche bath ye shall decocte and seethe these hearbes folowyng. Take of Bay leaues, Mallowes, redde Myntes, Mirtilles, Camomell, Moiozam, Marygoldes, ofeche an handfull, of Sage three handfules, of Mercurie and Brankurfin of eche two handfules, seethe all these hearbes together in fayre water, or (yf it were for a noble woman) in halfe water, and the other halfe redde wine,

## The fourth booke.

wine, in this bath let her remayne the space of a good halfe houre, and a litle before that she come forth of the bath, geue her to drinke of this electuarie folowynge.

Take of Spyrke, Nutmegges, Cloues, Gallyngall, Cinamome, and long pepper, of eche the wayght of a grote, of Annise seede the wayght of two grottes, of Sage leaues dyled the wayght of thre grottes, all these thynges (eche by them selues) beaten to small powder, temper them altogether in so much pure claryfied Honye as maye be sufficient to receaue all the powder, other els commixt with this powder so muche fine Suger as the wayght of the powder amounteth vnto, whereof ye shall geue vnto her at once the wayght of two grottes, with .viii. ix. oz. v. sponesfulles of good whyte oz claret wine, other els with good Muscadelly oz Muscadell.

And all this must be done eyther fastyng in the mornynge one houre before breakfast oz dyner, other els .v. oz .vii. houres after dyner, so that it be not done vppon a full stomacke. But yf ye take the bath and the electuarium in the mornynge, then at nyght thre oz foure houres after supper, let her receaue vnderneath her clothes, the vapour of these thynges folowynge into the priuitie. Take of Lauender dyled, of vnset Tyme, Bay berries, Iuie leaues, of eche halfe a litle handfull, of whyte frankensence the wayght of foure grottes, of Sage dyled, oz other two litle handfulls of Rosemarpe leaues

leaves one handfull, seethe these together in fayre water, and when they be perfectly sodden, then let the woman set her selfe ouer the vapour thereof, sitting groueling, other els set on a couer made for the nonce with a tunnell or cunduite, thoro'we the which the vapour may be directed into the womans priuie passage, the neere thereby, that the vertue thereof may approche vnto the wombe or wombe port.

Ye may also in the same water dyppe wooll, or els fyne linnen cloutes, and so conuay it into the priuie passage, there to remayne the space of one or two houres. This bath, electuarie, and vapour, I counsell them that haue neede to vse them the space of thre dayes continually, and then the thyrde nyght to companie with her husbände, and by the grace of **GD** she shalbe spedde. There be sometymes, that with the vse of the bath onlye, or the electuarie alone, eyther the vapour, without any farther remedye haue ben aptified to conception, but who that vseth it as is aboue mentioned, worketh the surer way.

These shalbe sufficient remedies for want of conception, proceeding of colde, moyste, and flegmatike humidities. Nowe yf it come by any distemperancie in heate and dryth: then let her be purged of coler, or other unkynd heate bred in the body, by thynges apt and meete for that purpose, and then afterwarde to vse bathes, electuaries, and vapours, of moderately cooling thynges, as of Roses, violettes, Letuse, Purslayne,

## The fourth booke.

layne, Plantaine, and dyuers other.

But forasmuch that moſte commonly the brittle aptitude of conception (in women hauyng theyz health) ſpyngeth of the ſuperfluitie of colde and moyſt humours (whereof we haue alreddie ſpoken) therefore all other impedimentes leſte a part, ye ſhall holde ye content with this for this tyme. For yf I woulde make mention of all the occaſions whereby conception may be let or impedit, then ſhoulde I here alleadge and bryng in all the diſeaſes that may happen to a woman in that partes, with the remedies thereof, whiche were a long worke, and not proper for this volume.

In this vi Chapter is entreated of diuers be-  
lyſyng receptes, as ye may here  
after reade.

**T**H<sup>E</sup> embellishing or beſlyſyng medicines whereof I entende to ſpeake here, be not to be vnderſtanden to be of that ſort, whereby any Adſtititious or outwarde forraigne beautie or ſet colours ſhoulde be acquired or gotten, the which farre ſet & damnable curioſitie, I doubt not but that all honeſt and vertuous ſadde women do vtterly abhorre and contemne: but here myne only meanyng is, to ſhewe howe to remove certayne blemyſhes, and as it were weedes of the bodye, through the whiche many tymes the naturall beautie thereof is obſcured and deſaced. For as in a fayre Garden, be it neuer ſo beauti-



beautifull, yet yf it be not regarded and looked  
vnto, the weedes entermynglyng them selues  
among the good hearbes, wyll defourne and  
emperyshe the good grace of them. For in the  
earth, be it neuer so well diligented and pyked,  
yet alwayes therein wyll remayne some sparkes  
and seedes of vnlooked for weedes, the whiche  
euer when tyme or season serueth, nature thru-  
steth forth.

Lyke wyse in the hodye of man, among the  
good and necessary humours, is some sparke or  
qualitie of yll and not necessarye humours, with  
the whiche nature beyng offended and cloyed,  
expelleth and dzyueth them forth sometymes in-  
to one place, and sometymes into another, ac-  
cording to the aptitude or feeblenelle in resi-  
staunce of the place receauyng it, and the force or  
violencie of nature (therewith greued) sendyng  
it, so that the superfluities founde in the vpper  
part and face or superficie of the skynne, ensueth  
by the superfluitie and dominion of lyke mat-  
ter conteyned and commixed in the vaynes a-  
mong the blood, and is a great euidence and  
testimonie thereof. But here I wyll not speake  
of all kyndes of vtter diseases spryngyng of this  
inwarde corrupted humours, but onlye of  
suche thynges as commonlye chaunce to men  
and women without any imperysment of theyr  
health.

As for example, fyrste I wyll brecfely declare  
the fylthynesse of the head, called in latin Perrigo,

## The fourth booke.

In Englishe, the Dandruffe of the head, the which is, when that in kembyng and cratchyng of the head, certayne whyte scales, as it were bryanne, falleth of from the head, and lyeth very thicke among and vnder the heere.

¶ Of the causes and remedies of Dandruffe of the head.

**T**HE cause of this Dandruffe commeth by aboundaunce of fleumatike humours, commixt with the blood, the which dayly and hourelly by vncessible sweatyng, euaporateth and issueth forth of the pores, in the skinne that couereth the panbone, and as fast as it issueth forth, dryeth on the vtter superficie of the skinne, and there remaynyng and gatheryng together, becommeth euery day more and more, therto greatly helpyng the forest of heere which couereth, harbereth and retayneth such superfluities, more in those places then in any other where no heere groweth. And most commonlye they that haue blacke heere, haue more store of Dandruffe then other. This humour suffered ouerlong to raigne on the head, destroyeth and corrupteth the rootes of the heeres, makyng them to fall of in great plentie, and specially in kembyng. And although this superfluitie be not cleanly, yet notwithstanding it shall be no wisdom for me to teache, ne any other herewith encombred, to learne howe to stoppe it, for feare of farther inconueniences, but onely I counsell you once in ten dayes at the least, to washe

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxviii.

washe and scoure the head cleane with good lye, wherein let be steeped in a linnen bagge of Annis seede, Cumin, dyed Rosemarie, Fenugreke, and the ryndes of Pomegranate, of eche lyke much: and beware that after the washyng of your head ye take no colde, before the head be perfectly dyed.

And whereas some say, that they whiche vse ofte washyng of theyr heades, shalbe very prone to head ache: that is not true, but only in suche that after they haue ben washed, roll by theyr hayre (beyng yet wette) about theyr heades, the colde whereof is daungerous to byng them to Catarrhes and poses, with other inconueniencies. Wherefore all diligence must be had, that the head may be exactly well dyed with warme clothes, whylest the head is yet hotte of the washyng, and then neuer feare no inconueniencies, but rather conuenience and commoditie: and let this be done also fastyng in the mornyng, or els one houre before supper, or v. houres after supper: this ofte washyng shall purysye the skynne of the head, and stedfaste the hayre from falling, leuiate and lyghten the head, with all the senses therein conteyned, and greatlye comfort the braynes.

To take away hayre from places where  
it is vnseemely.

**I**tem, sometymes hayre groweth in places vnseemely, and out of order: as in many maydens and women the hayre groweth so lowe

## The fourth booke.

in the foreheades and the temples, that it disfigureth them: for this ye maye vse thre wayes to remoue them, eyther to plucke bp one after another with pincers, such as many women haue for the nonce, eyther els with this lye solowng. Take newe burnt Lyme foure ounces, of Arsenicke an ounce, steepe both these in a pynt of water the space of two dayes, and then boyle it from a pynt to the halfe.

And to prooue whether it be perfect, dyppe a feather therein, and yf the plume of the feather depart of easly, then is it strong enough: with this water then annoynt so farre the place that ye woulde haue bare from hayre, as it lyketh you, and within a quarter of an houre plucke at the hayres, and they wyll solowe, and then washe that place muche with water wherein branne hath ben steeped: and that done, annoynt the place with the whyte of a newe layde egge and oyle Olive, beaten and mixt together with the iuyce of Singrene or Purflane, to alaye the heate engendred of the foresayde lye. The thyrde way to remoue hayre, is with a plaster made of very drye pytche, and bypon leather applyed to the place, the hayres beyng fyrst shauen, or cutte as neare as can be with a payre of Cyfers.

Nowe when the hayres be bp by the rootes, then to let them that they growe no more: take of Alome the wayght of a groate, and dissolue it in two spoonefulls of the iuyce of Nyghtshade, or of Henbane, and therewithall annoynte the  
place

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxix.

place two or three tymes euery day, the space of  
ix. or. x. dayes, and hayre wyll growe no more in  
that place.

To do away Frekens or other spottes in  
the face.

**T**hese frekens and such other spottes in the  
face or other where in the bodye, may be  
taken away by often annoyntyng them  
with the oyle of Carter, to be founde alwayes  
at the Apothecaries, and surely that oyle is so  
ueraigne for that purpose.

Item, take Eleborus, and seeth of it an ounce  
in halfe a pynt of strong whyte wineger, tyll  
halfe be consumed, then myrte therewith Honey  
three spoonefulles, and the wayght of a penye of  
Mercury sublimid, (to be had at the Apotheca-  
ries) and seethe these together agayne tyll it be-  
come thicke: with this annoynt the frekens,  
and it wyll destroy them. This is also very good  
for the Morphewe, and other discoloration or  
staynyng of the skynne.

To destroy Wartes and suche lyke excrescences  
on the face or els where.

**F**or this purpose nothyng is so excellent  
as euery day once, the space of three or foure  
dayes, to droppe one droppe of strong wa-  
ter, called Aqua fortis, on them, for this destroy-  
eth them in very short tyme.

Item, the iuyce of a red Onion, and the iuyce  
of Marygoldes is very good for the same.

Item, dissolue a lytle Mercury sublimid in  
sayre

## The fourth booke.

sayre water, and therewith drop the Wartes, and they wyll soone wither and consume away.

To cleare and clarifie the skyn in the handes, face, or other part of the body.

**F**OR this is nothyng better then to take one spoonefull of the oyle of Carter, and sixe spoonefulls of water, with these comixed together, washe the handes, face, and other partes, for it scoureth, cleanseth, and purifyeth the skinne soueraignely, and wyll suffer no fylthynesse to remayne in the pores of the fleshe, and this oyle of Carter is made on this wyse.

Take wine lyes dzyed, the whiche the Golde-smythes do call Arguyl, and beate it into powder, and then fyll thereof a Goldesmythes crudyble, and set it among hoate coales, tyll the Arguyl begyn to waxe blacke: then take it out of the fyre and let it coole, and bynde it in a linnen cloute, and hange it a lyttle ouer the vapour of hoate boylng water: that done, hange this cloute with the Arguyl in a glasse with a broade mouth, so that the bagge or cloute touche not the bottome of the glasse, and the water or oyle called Carter wyll droppe downe a lyttle and lyttle: and the sooner, yf it stande in a very colde and moyste sellar.

Item, to scoure the handes and the body, some vse to washe theyr handes with the powder of Dresse, which is the roote of the blew flourde-luce, and some with Beane flowre.

Item, the yolke and whyte of egges is good for that purpose, and so is hony.

To souple and mollifie the ruggednesse  
of the skynne.

**A**nnoynt the skyn with the oyle of sweete Al-  
mondes, the same is verve good also for  
chypnynges of the lypes or handes.

Item, Beere suet is very proper for the same  
purpose, especially beyng well washed and tem-  
pered with Rose water, wherein hath ben dis-  
solved two or thre graynes of pure Muske.

**C** Agaynst sodayne rysynges of ppymples, thzough bn-  
kynde heate, in the face or els where.

**T**Ake the whyte of an egge, and beate it well  
with a spoone, and then therwith commire  
two spoonefulls of Salet oyle, one spoone-  
full of Rose water, another of the iuyce of So-  
rell, & halfe a lyttle spoonefull of Vineger, here-  
with annoynt the ppymples and rysynges.

To kepe and pferue the teeth cleane.

**F**irst yf they be very yelow and filthy, or blac-  
kythe, let a Barber scoure, rubbe, and pycke  
them cleane and whyte, then after to mayn-  
teyne them cleane, it shalbe verve good to rubbe  
them euerye day with the roote of a Hallowe,  
and to pyke them cleane that no meate remayne  
and putrifie betweene the teeth.

Item, take of the small whyte pybble stones  
which be founde by the water sides, and beate  
thē in very small powder, hereof take an ounce,  
and of Masticke one dram, myngle them toge-  
ther

## The fourth booke.

ther, and with this powder once in. xiiii. dayes rub exactly your teeth, and this shall kepe your teeth fayre and whyte, but beware ye touche not, ne bere the gummes therewithall.

Item, to stable and stedfaste the teethe, and to kepe the gummes in good case, it shalbe verve good every day in the mornynge, to washe well the mouth with red wine.

### Of stynkyng breath.

**S**tinck of the breath commeth eyther by occasion bread in the mouth, or els in the stomack. If it come from the stomacke, then the body must be purged by the farther aduylt of a Purgation. If it be engendred in the mouth only, then mooste commonly it commeth of some rotten and corrupted hollowe teeth, whiche in this case must be plucked out, and the gummes well scoured and washed with Vineger wherein hath ben sodden Cloues and Nutmegges. The cleanlye keepynge of the teeth doth conferre muche to the sauerinesse of the mouth.

### Of the ranke sauour of the armeholes.

**T**his vice in many persons is verve tedious and lothsome: the remedie whereof is, to purge fyrste the colericke and egre humours, originall causers of the same, and afterwarde to washe the armeholes oftentymes with the water wherein wormwood hath ben sodden together with Camomell, and a lytle quantitie of Alome.

Item,

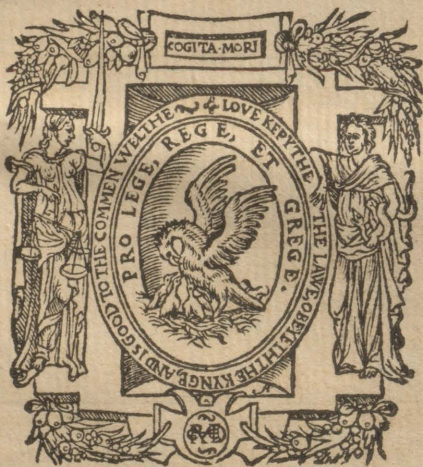


The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxxi

Item Aucthors do wyte, that the rootes of Artichantes (the pyth pyked out) sodden in whyte wine & so drunke, doth clense the stenche of the armeholes and other partes of the bodye by the brine. For (as Galen also doth testitie) he prouoketh copie and plentie of stynkyng and vnsauerie brine from all partes of the bodye, the whiche proprietie it hath by speciall gyfte, and not only by his hoate qualitie. And thus here I make an ende of this fourth and last booke.

FINIS.

1565.

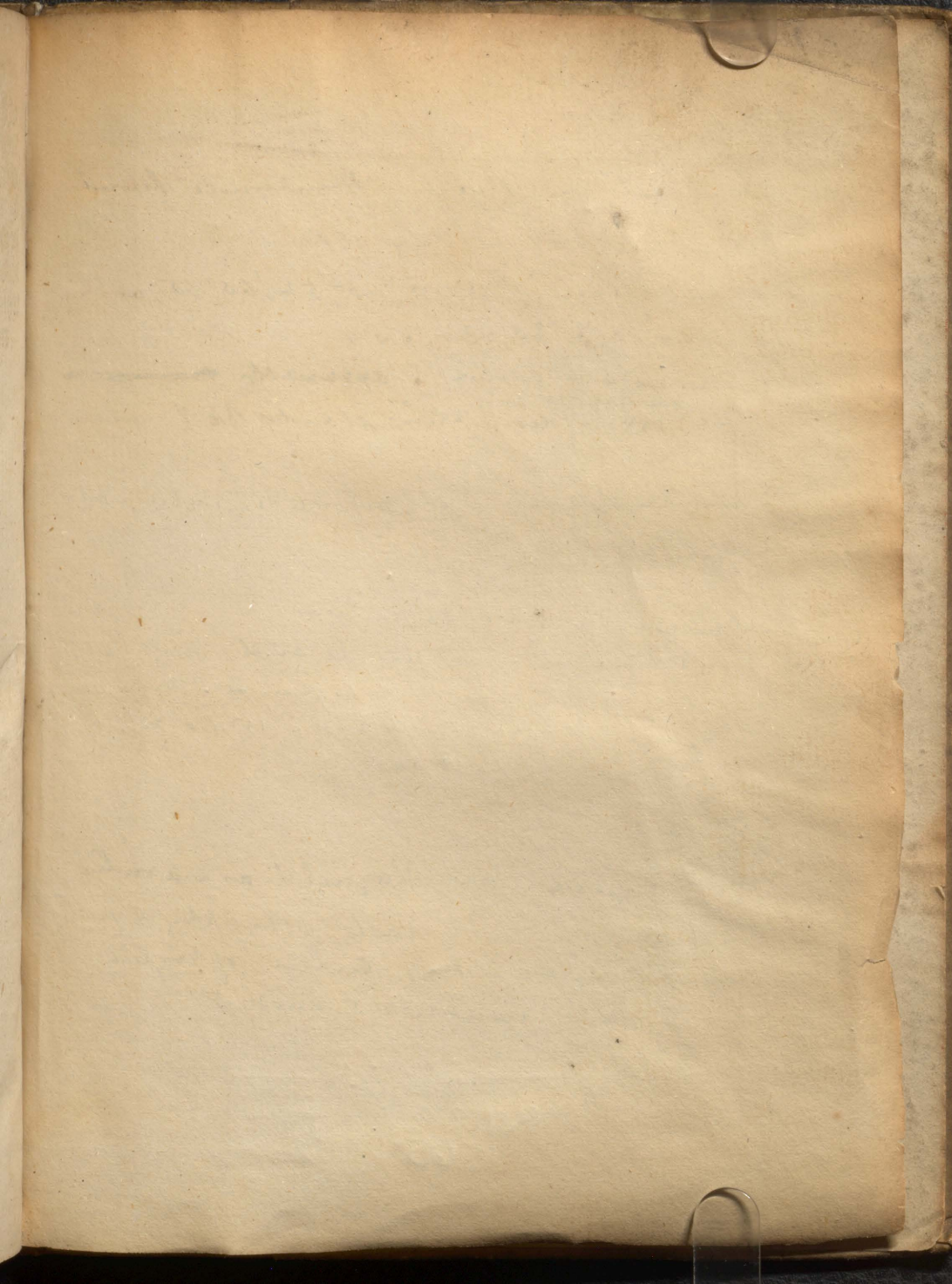


Faint, illegible text, possibly bleed-through from the reverse side of the page.

FINIS

1707





Leaves 29-90 (O. IV. 20) missing.

See Ballantyne. Byll of Manlynde. Reprint  
In. Obel. & Genealogy. 1907

He gives list of editions 1540, '45, '52, '60, '65, '64?,  
'98, 1604, 1613, '26, '34, & '54

This is the 5th edition. ~~apparently~~ ~~the~~ ~~7th~~  
plate <sup>are very good ex.</sup> ~~with~~ the descriptions at end of Bk. I, and the  
usual cuts

See also Klein Archiv. f. d. Geschichte der Medizin Bd III  
p. 330

14. w Macchelen sent the 1545-edition. The took it  
at £20. Inardit writes that he ~~sent~~ bought a copy  
for £9. at the Inglis sale 16 years ago. And a good  
copy is worth £20-25. He sold a 1540 ed. a  
few years ago for £50. no

For discussion about Reynald as a printer  
see Ballantyne. no doubt of the pl. & printer  
were the same. Suff. Century of English.  
Book Trade. seems not to doubt it.

R718w  
1565

As sold price £120. at Fr. Edwards, 1942

THOMAS RAYNOLDE  
Fellow of Merton 1520  
(G. C. Brodrick: Memorials of Merton, 1885, p.251)

This man should not be confused with the Thomas Raynolde (or Reynolds) who was Fellow of Merton 1526 - and Warden (Brodrick, op. cit. pp. 164, 254). The two men are distinct also in Boase's Register, where T. Raynolde becomes B.A. on 4 Feb. 1518, and T. Raynolde (~~one~~ <sup>the</sup> Warden) on 23 Jan. 1522. (Boase, pp. 107, 123).

N.B. Dr. John Chamber (or Chambre), who preceded Raynolde as Warden of Merton (Brodrick, pp. 163-4) was not only physician to Henry VIII, but held several ecclesiastical offices (see D.N.B.).

Walter Buckler (or Bucler or Buclour), Fellow of Merton 1522-(Brodrick, p. 253) was Secretary to Queen Katherine Parr from 1544 to 1547 and visited Paris in 1536, and Germany in 1545. As his colleague he of course knew Chambre and the others.

Vener in 1539

In J. Gairdner's Letters & Papers of Henry VIII, xii, pt. 2, no. 273 is a letter dated London 17 July 1537 from Tho. Raynolde to the wife of Ld. Lisle at Calais. (For Lisle see D.N.B. "Plantagenet, Arthur").

Raynolde thanks her for writing to Dr. Chambre in his favour. No man living does more for a poor man than the Dr. does for him. He has cost the Dr. since he came here 40 marks. Owing to his goodness is one of the Queen's chaplains and daily puts him to charges. Mentions his friend Mr. Bucler.

This reference shows that he is the "Reynolds" whom Buckler, in Gairdner, op. cit., xi, no. 63 (letter dated Paris, July 1536) mentions as having then been in Paris. The friendship with Buckler raises a strong presumption that the Reynolds or Raynolde of these letters was one of Buckler's colleagues at Merton, but not the Fellow who afterwards became Warden, since his other benefices (e.g. Canonry in Cardinal College, 1525-1530; C. Plummer, Elizabethan Oxford, p. 59) would have made him too prosperous to express himself as does the writer of that letter.

Three points suggest the possible identity of this Raynolde with the author of the preface of the "Byrth of Mankynd":

- (1) The friendship with Dr. Chambre;
- (2) ~~The~~ visit to Paris (cf. Ballantyne's essay, p.306);
- (3) The chaplaincy to Queen Jane Seymour; since the preface refers to the teachings of the Bible in a way tending to indicate that the author was of the reforming

party. Buckler also belonged to that party.

